Primary 4

AL-BAHER

Connect

Second Term

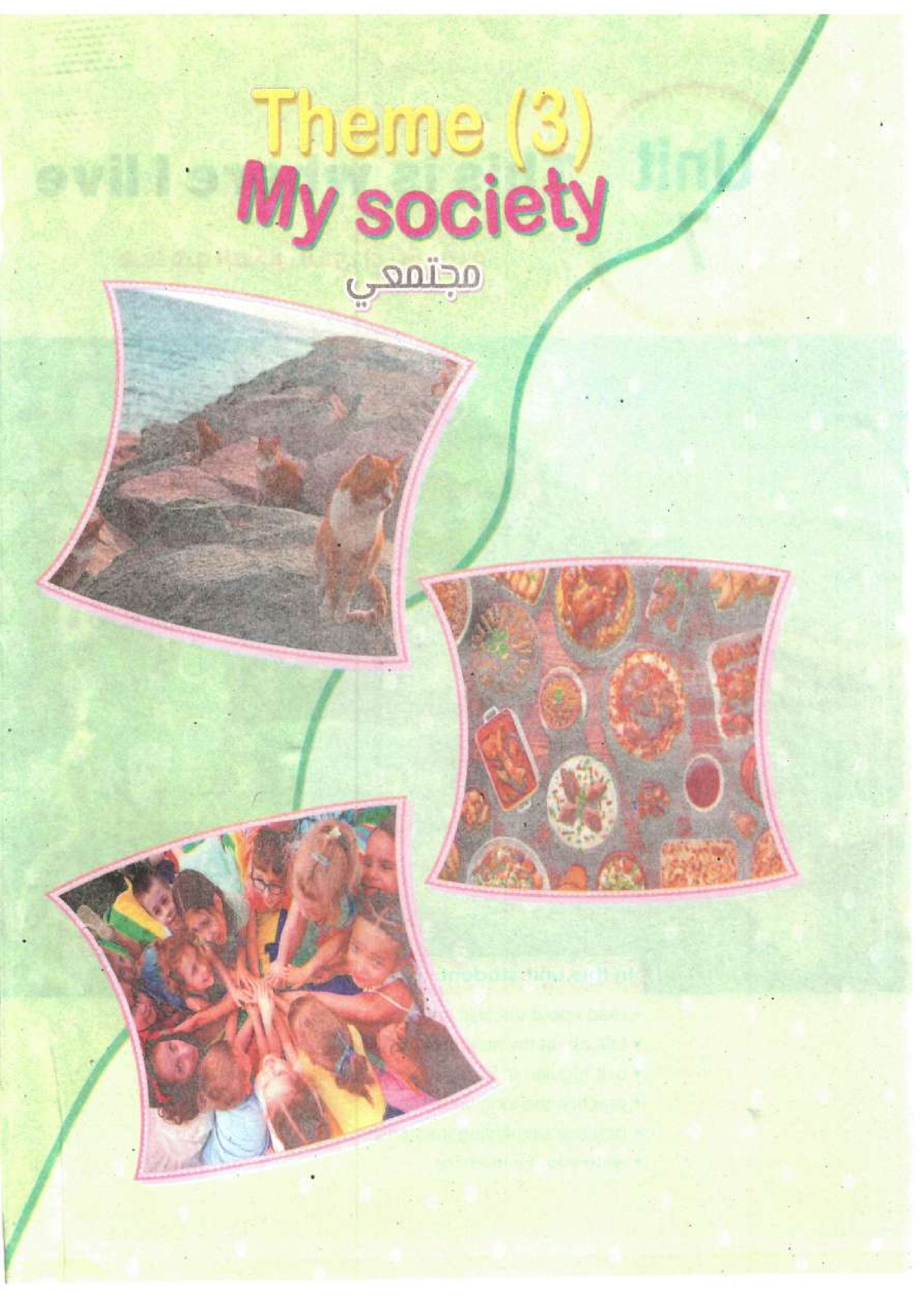
Parents' Guide



Contents



Theme (3)
My society
مجتمعي





Unit 7

This is where I live

هذا هو المكان الذي أعيش فيه

In this unit students will ...

- read about the Nile and why it is so important.
- talk about my neighborhood in the past and now.
- use regular and irregular past simple verb forms.
- practice the long vowel sounds.
- practice simplifying fractions.
- write about a memory.

Lesson (1) The Nile

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد.

Different Environments بيئات مختلفة


village
قرية


the Nile
النيل


city
مدينة


river
نهر


building
مبنى


oasis
واحة


mountain
جبل


forest
غابة


desert
صحراء

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

reptiles	زواحف	crocodile	تمساح
branch	فرع	different	مختلف
quiz	اختبار قصير	human	إنسان - بشر
population	عدد سكان	planet	كوكب
capital	عاصمة	home	موطن/ وطن / منزل

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
travel	يسافر	travelled
guess	يخمن	guessed
live	يعيش	lived

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew
do	يفعل	did
have / has	يملك	had

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the longest	الأطول	the shortest	الأقصر
travel to	يسافر إلى	the center of the earth	مركز الأرض
home for	موطن لـ	live in	يعيش في
Which of ...?	أي من ...؟	kinds of	أنواع من

Study the following

1 - The Nile is the longest river in the world.

نهر النيل هو أطول نهر في العالم.

6,670 kilometers long. That's like travelling to the

يبلغ طول نهر النيل ٦,٦٧٠ كيلو مترا. وهذا يعادل السفر إلى مركز الأرض.

3 - The Nile has two branches in Egypt.

نهر النيل له فرعين في مصر.

4 - The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles!

نهر النيل هو موطن لأنواع مختلفة من الأسماك والطيور والسلاحف!

5 - One of the largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

يعيش فيه أحد أكبر الزواحف و هو تمساح النيل.

Did you know ?

Capital of Cats in Romania has a cat population that is four times larger than the human population?

هل تعلم أن العاصمة العالمية للقطط في رومانيا بها عدد سكان أكبر بأربعة أضعاف من عدد سكان البشر؟



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

A: Let's do this quiz. لنقم بهذا الاختبار.

B: What's it about? عن ماذا؟

A: The Nile. النيل.

B: That sounds very interesting. هذا يبدو شيقًا جدًا.

A: Of course. The Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. No River Nile, no Egypt. Come on, let's try.
Question 1, which sentence is true? Is the Nile the shortest, the longest or the widest river in the world?

بالطبع. يجلب النيل الحياة لمصر كلها. لا مصر بدون نهر النيل. هيا دعنا نجرب. السؤال رقم ١، ما هي الجملة الصحيحة؟ هل النيل هو أقصر، أطول أو أعرض نهر في العالم؟

B: Hmm, I don't know. I guess it's the longest,what do you think?

همم، لا أعلم. أظن أنه الأطول، ما رأيك؟

A: Yeah, I know both the Amazon and the Nile are very, very long. Let's choose "b".Next question: " The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long. is it like traveling to the center of the earth, traveling to the moon or traveling to Australia?

نعم، أعلم أن كلًا من نهر الأمازون والنيل طويل جدًا جدًا. دعنا نختار "b".
السؤال التالي: يبلغ طول النيل ٦,٦٧٠ كيلو مترًا، هل يشبه السفر إلى مركز الأرض، أم السفر إلى القمر، أم السفر إلى أستراليا؟

B: Maybe traveling to the center of the earth? ربما مثل السفر إلى مركز الأرض؟

A: Hmm, I'm not sure, that sounds like a good guess. Number 3, we need to look at the pictures and decide which river is the Nile.

همم، لست متأكدة هذا يبدو وكأنه تخمين جيد. رقم ٣ نحن بحاجة إلى ألقاء نظرة على الصور وتحديد أي نهر هو النيل.

B: I think it's 'c'. أعتقد أنها «c».

A: Why? لماذا؟

B: In 'c" you can see the Cairo Tower, so it's clearly in Egypt!

في "c" يمكنك أن ترى برج القاهرة، لذا فمن الواضح إنه في مصر!

A: Ok, last one. How many branches does the Nile have in Egypt?

حسنًا. السؤال الأخير. كم فرع لنهر النيل في مصر.

B: I'm going to say three, that sounds like a good number.
Erm, check on your phone. سأقول ثلاثة، هذا يبدو عددًا جيدًا. تحقق من هاتفك.

A: Ok, Aha! There are 2 branches! حسنًا. آها! يوجد فرعين!

Help your child read about the Nile and why it is important.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن نهر النيل وسبب أهميته.

General Activities



Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

branches - fish - elephant - earth - crocodile

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It is about 6,670 kilometers long. That's like traveling to the center of the 1) .... The Nile has two 2) .... in Egypt. It is home for different kinds of 3) .... , birds and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile 4) .... , lives in it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
   a) tallest b) shortest c) longest d) widest
2. We can't travel to the .... of the earth.
   a) north b) west c) center d) east
3. The Nile has two .... in Egypt.
   a) buildings b) canals c) villages d) branches
4. The Nile is home .... different kinds of fish.
   a) with b) on c) for d) at
5. Camels live in the ....
   a) river b) sea c) desert d) lake
6. Crocodiles are the planet's largest ....
   a) insects b) fish c) birds d) reptiles
7. Village, city and desert are different ....
   a) villages b) rivers c) oases d) environments

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches. There are many people living near the Nile. The Nile is 6.670 kilometers long. That's like travelling to the center of the earth. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, The Nile crocodile, lives in it.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) The Nile has .... branches.

a) five b) two c) three d) four

2) The general idea of the text is about the ....

a) Nile b) school c) tower d) plants

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

4) What is the longest river in the world? ....

4 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية:

the Nile is the longest river

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The Nile

Guiding words:

(longest - 6,670 kilometers - two branches)

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (2) A short story about Grandpa

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد.

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

excited	متحمس (مسرور)	quiet	هادئ
visitors	زوار	truck	شاحنة
wonder	يتساءل / يتعجب	curious	محب للاطلاع / فضولي
memory	ذاكرة / ذكرى	grandpa	جد

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

street	شارع	space	فضاء / فراغ
box	صندوق	grass	حشائش / عشب
metal	معدن	right	يمين
Colossi of Memnon	تمثالا ممنون	left	يسار

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
pull	يسحب	pulled
bury	يدفن	buried
walk	يمشي	walked
study	يذاكر	studied
cross	يعبر	crossed
wonder	يتساءل	wondered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
find	يجد	found
dig	يحفر	dug
say	يقول	said
grow up	ينمو / يكبر	grew up
get up	يستيقظ	got up
feel	يشعر	felt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

inside the box	داخل الصندوق	sit down	يجلس
cross the road	يعبر الطريق	on his face	على وجهه
many years ago	منذ عدة سنوات	pull out	يسحب للخارج
from all around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم	look for	يبحث عن

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Grandpa and his box of memories

"Look, this was my street." Grandpa was very excited. We were in the village where he grew up. It is near the Colossi of Memnon.

«انظر، كان هذا شارعي.» كان جدي متحمسًا للغاية. كنا في القرية التي نشأ فيها. إنها بالقرب من تمثالي ممنون.



"It was very quiet when I lived here," said Grandpa. "Now, there are lots of visitors from all around the world." "That's where my friend lived. We played football on this street. There were no cars then."

قال جدي: « كان المكان هادئًا جدًا عندما كنت أعيش هنا. الآن هناك الكثير من الزوار من جميع أنحاء العالم.»

«هذا هو المكان الذي عاش فيه صديقي. لعبنا كرة القدم في هذا الشارع. لم تكن هناك سيارات حينها».

Grandpa looked right and left, and he crossed the road. The road had lots of trucks and cars. "And this," he said "is where I lived." We looked at the space. There was no house. There was only grass and one big tree. "Hmm, I wonder. It was so many years ago...." Grandpa looked at the tree. Grandpa walked to the tree. He looked at the ground. Then he started digging. He pulled out an old, metal box. He had a big smile on his face. "Look!" he said. He was very excited. "We were eight years old when we buried this. Let's sit down and look inside the box." "Yes, please," I said. "I'm very curious!"

نظر الجد يمينًا ويسارًا وعبر الطريق. كان على الطريق الكثير من الشاحنات والسيارات. قال: " وهذا هو المكان الذي عشت فيه". نظرنا إلى المكان الفارغ. لم يكن هناك منزل. كان هناك فقط عشب وشجرة واحدة كبيرة. نظر الجد إلى الشجرة وقال "هممم، أتعجب: كان ذلك منذ سنوات عديدة ..." . نظر الجد إلى الشجرة، ثم مشى الجد إلى الشجرة. ونظر إلى الأرض، ثم بدأ في الحفر. وأخرج صندوقًا معدنيًا قديمًا. كانت على وجهه ابتسامة كبيرة. قال: "انظر!" وكان متحمسًا جدًا. "كنا في الثامنة من العمر عندما دفنا هذا. هيّا بنا نجلس وننظر داخل الصندوق." قلت: " نعم من فضلك، أنا شغوف جدًا!"

Help your child read the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة.

Language

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

- We played football on this street. - He pulled out an old, metal box.

Form التكوين

يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

يضاف (d, ed, ied) إلى الفعل المنتظم.

like → liked pull → pulled carry → carried

Spelling Notes:

١- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (e) يضاف (d) فقط.

like → liked live → lived

٢- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ثم نضيف (ied).

bury → buried study → studied

٣- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف متحرك يتم إضافة (ed) للفعل.

play → played stay → stayed

٤- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

stop → stopped travel → travelled

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي.

swim → swam see → saw go → went

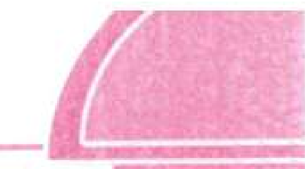
Negative النفي

Subject (فاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

We didn't play football on this street.

Help your child use the past simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.



Lesson (2)

Questions

(Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

Did + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

Did you do your homework? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q.W + did + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

When did you get up? - I got up at seven o'clock.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	ago	منذ
last (week /...)	(الأسبوع/...) الماضي	in the past	في الماضي

I studied English yesterday.

Verb to (be) in the past

was | **were**

(I / He / She / It / A singular noun) + was ....

It was very quiet when I lived here.

(We / You / They / A plural noun) + were ....

They were at the museum yesterday.

Negative النفي

He / She / It / A singular noun + was not (wasn't)............

Grandpa's village wasn't very noisy.

We / You / They / A plural noun + were not (weren't)............

There weren't any cars on the street.

Help your child use the past simple tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.

Question

(Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

(Was / Were) + subject (فاعل) ....?

Was Grandpa very excited? - Yes, he was. - No, he wasn't.

Wh- question بكلمة استفهام

Q.W + (was / were) + subject (فاعل) ....?

Where were they yesterday? - They were in the village.

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. My uncle .... (visit) us last Friday.
2. Aya .... (walk) to school yesterday.
3. .... (Do) you water the plants two days ago?
4. How did you .... (felt) when you found the box?
5. Many years ago, my grandpa ...... (bury) a metal box in the garden.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Grandpa .... very excited yesterday.
   a) is b) were c) was d) be
2. Last Friday, we .... in the village.
   a) is b) were c) was d) are
3. I .... here two years ago.
   a) lives b) was lived c) live d) lived
4. There .... no cars in the past.
   a) was b) were c) is d) are
5. We .... football on this street.
   a) playing b) plays c) played d) were played
6. When did he .... up?
   a) got b) getting c) gets d) get
7. .... you do your homework yesterday?
   a) Do b) Did c) Were d) Does

Help your child use the past simple tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.

Lesson (2)

Ask and answer.

اسأل وأجب.



When did you get up today?

متى استيقظت اليوم؟



I got up at six o'clock.

استيقظت الساعة السادسة بالضبط.



What did you do on your way home?

ماذا فعلت وأنت في طريقك للمنزل؟



I played football.

لعبت كرة القدم.



What subjects did you study today?

ما المواد الدراسية التي درستها اليوم؟



I studied English and Math.

درست اللغة الإنجليزية و الرياضيات.

Help your child ask and answer.

ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويجيب.

Did you do your homework?
Was it easy?
هل أديت واجبك؟ وهل كان سهلًا؟

Yes, I did my homework.
It was very easy.
نعم، أديت واجبي، وكان سهلًا جدًا.

What games did you play today?
ما الألعاب التي لعبتها اليوم؟

I played video games.
لعبت ألعاب الفيديو

Read and complete this paragraph. اقرأ وأكمل الفقرة.

Yesterday, I .... up at seven o'clock. I studied English and Math. I .... football on my way home. I .... my homework. It .... very easy. I .... video games.

Help your child ask and answer.
ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويجيب.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

was - buried - were - played - quiet

Grandpa's village was very 1) .... Now, there are a lot of people. There 2) .... no cars in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars. Grandpa 3) .... eight years old when he 4) .... the box of memories. Now, Grandpa is very old.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Grandpa's village .... very quiet in the past.
   a) is b) was c) were d) be
2. He .... the box of memories.
   a) are burying b) bury c) buried d) burying
3. What did you .... on your way home?
   a) does b) done c) doing d) do
4. In the past, I .... long hair.
   a) has b) have c) having d) had
5. Grandpa .... to the tree yesterday.
   a) walk b) walking c) walked d) walks
6. I'm very .... to know everything about the story.
   a) slow b) sad c) curious d) quiet
7. I .... why he came late.
   a) make b) redo c) do d) wonder
8. He looked at the ground and started ....
   a) cooking b) digging c) writing d) reading
9. Grandpa .... out an old, metal box.
   a) made b) pulled c) called d) wrote
10. He had a lot of .... at home yesterday.
    a) bikes b) visitors c) trucks d) cars

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Ali .... (were) young when he buried the box.
2. When .... (do) you get up yesterday?
3. The village was very quiet in the .... (present).
4. We .... (play) football on the street in the past.
5. There .... (was) no cars in the past.
6. .... (Do) you do your homework yesterday?
7. What did you .... (does) on your way home?
8. I .... (live) in Cairo ten years ago.
9. How .... (do) Grandpa feel when he saw his old street?
10. I .... (study) English yesterday.
11. My grandma .... (baking) a cake last Friday.
12. Did you .... (took) pictures yesterday?

4 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الاتية

what games did you play today

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Your day

Guiding words:

(got up - did homework - played)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) Part 1: A short story

Vocabulary المفردات

mouse / mice	فأر - فئران	loud	عالي الصوت	excited	متحمس
city	مدينة	pretty	جميلة	scared	خائف / مرعوب
the country	الريف	hole	جحر	smoke	دخان
pleased = delighted	مسرور	voice	صوت (الإنسان)	noise	ضوضاء
exciting	مثير	smells	روائح	sounds	أصوات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
wait	ينتظر	waited
prepare	يُعد / يُجهز	prepared
rain	تمطر	rained
cover	يغطي	covered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
give	يعطي	gave
know	يعرف	knew
come	يأتي	came
run	يجري	ran

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in the ground	في الأرض	around the corner	حول (الناصية / الزاوية)
bright lights	أضواء ساطعة	It's time to ...	حان الوقت لـ ...
Why don't you ...?	لم لا...؟ / لماذا لا ...؟	better than	أفضل من
catch the train	يلحق القطار	go back	يعود / يرجع
good for	جيدة لـ / مناسبة لـ	full of	مليئة بـ
There's no reason to wait.	ليس هناك سبب للانتظار.		

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

City Mouse and Country Mouse

فأر المدينة وفأر الريف

Beginning:

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground.
The country mouse was pleased . He gave his friend grass and seeds.
The city mouse said, "Thank you. You know, the city is pretty and full of bright lights; why don't you come and see?"
The country mouse was delighted and very excited.
The city mouse stopped eating and said, "There's no reason to wait. We can catch a train at eight."
The two friends ran to the train, just as it started to rain.

زار فأر المدينة فأر الريف في حفرته في الأرض. كان فأر الريف مسرورًا. وقدم لصديقه العشب والبذور. قال فأر المدينة: " شكرًا لك. كما تعلم المدينة جميلة ومليئة بالأضواء الساطعة، فلماذا لا تأتي وترى؟" كان فأر الريف مبتهجًا ومتحمسًا للغاية. توقّف فأر المدينة عن الأكل وقال: "لا يوجد سبب للانتظار. يمكننا اللحاق بقطار الساعة الثامنة". ركض الصديقان إلى القطار عندما بدأت تمطر.

Middle:

In the city, the smoke from the cars covered the stars and the noise was incredibly loud. The country mouse was scared.
He wasn't prepared for so many new sounds and smells.
Suddenly, a cat's voice said, "Hmm, two mice and some bread."
"Run, run, run" said the city mouse. They ran around the corner.

في المدينة، غطى دخان السيارات النجوم وكانت الضوضاء عالية (صاخبة) بشكل لا يصدّق. كان فأر الريف خائفًا. لم يكن مستعدًا للعديد من الأصوات والروائح الجديدة. وفجأة قال قط: "هممم، فأران وبعض الخبز".
قال فأر المدينة: " اركض، اركض، اركض". ركضا حول الزاوية.

End:

The country mouse said, "Thank you my friend, the city is exciting, but it's time for me to go back to the country and back to where life is good for me."

قال فأر الريف: "شكرًا لك يا صديقي، المدينة مثيرة، ولكن حان الوقت للعودة إلى الريف والعودة إلى حيث تكون الحياة جيّدة بالنسبة لي".

Help your child listen and read the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة.

Lesson (3)

There are three stages of the story

يوجد ثلاث مراحل للقصة

Beginning بداية

The city mouse visited the country mouse.

Middle منتصف

The two mice caught the train.

End نهاية

The country mouse went back to where life is good for him.

The moral of the story: Different people like different things.

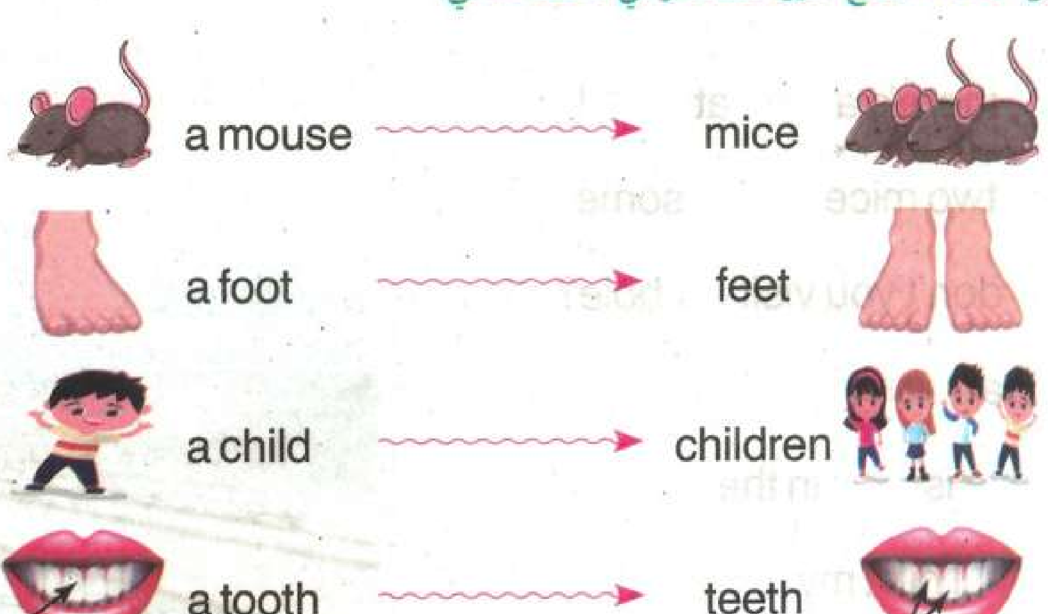
مغزى القصة: الأشخاص مختلفين وبالتالي يفضلون أشياء مختلفة.



Irregular Plural Nouns صيغ الجمع الغير منتظم

- There are many irregular plural nouns that are learnt as they are.

هناك بعض الأسماء الجمع الغير منتظمة والتي تُحفظ كما هي.



Part 2: Pronunciation

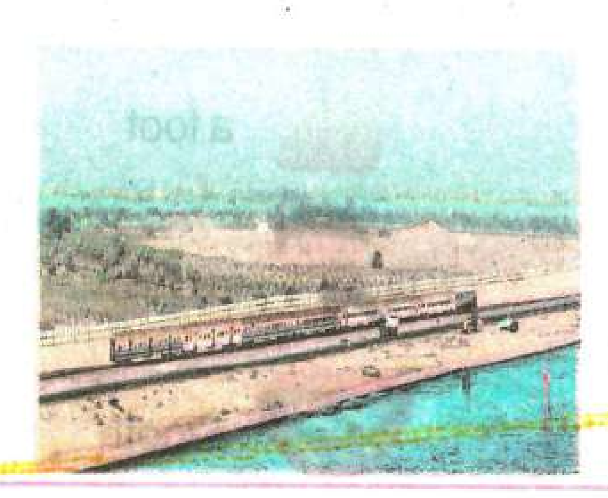
Long Vowel Sounds

الأصوات المتحركة الممدودة.

/eɪ/		/i:/		/ai/		/ou/	
gave	أعطى	see	يرى	my	ملكي	no	لا
wait	ينتظر	seed	بذرة	mice	فئران	go	يذهب
train	قطار	tree	شجرة	bright	لامع	smoke	دخان
rain	مطر	pleased	مسرور	light	ضوء	hole	حفرة
eight	ثمانية	eat	يأكل	delighted	مسرور	toe	أصبع قدم
ate	أكل	reason	سبب	excited	متحمس	know	يعرف
plate	طبق	he	هو	life	حياة	grow	ينمو
late	متأخر	she	هي			low	منخفض

 **Read the following sentences.** اقرأ الجمل الآتية.

1. Wait, there's a train at eight!
2. I see two mice eating some seeds.
3. Why don't you visit my hole?
4. We can see three trees.
5. My kite is high in the sky.
6. Oh no, I hurt my toe.

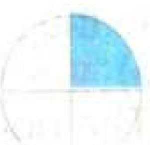


Help your child practice the long vowel sounds.
ساعد طفلك أن يتدرب على الأصوات المتحركة الطويلة.

Part 3: CLIL: Math



Fraction (الكسر الاعتيادي)

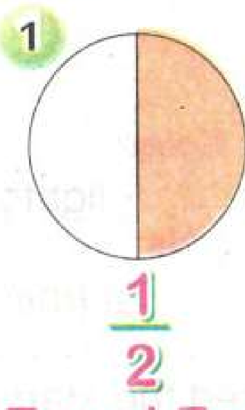


A fraction is a part of a whole. الكسر هو جزء من كل

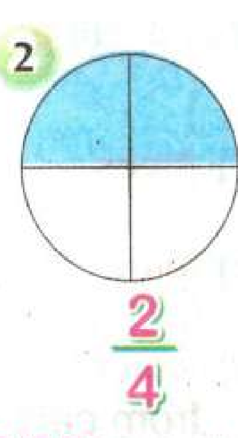
It has a numerator and denominator. وله بسط ومقام

$\frac{1}{2}$ → numerator / denominator

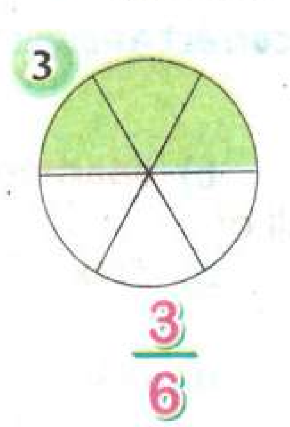
- $<$ smaller than (أصغر من)
- $>$ bigger than (أكبر من)
- $=$ the same as (يساوي)



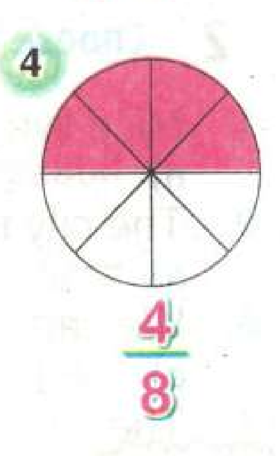
1 — $\frac{1}{2}$



2 — $\frac{2}{4}$



3 — $\frac{3}{6}$



4 — $\frac{4}{8}$

Equal Fractions: (الكسور المتساوية)

لاحظ :

$$\frac{1}{2} = \frac{2}{4} = \frac{3}{6} = \frac{4}{8}$$

$\frac{1}{2}$ is bigger than $\frac{2}{6}$ $>$	$\frac{1}{2}$ is smaller than $\frac{3}{4}$ $<$	$\frac{1}{2}$ is the same as $\frac{4}{8}$ $=$

Simplifying Fractions: (تبسيط الكسور)

We can make a fraction simpler by dividing a numerator and denominator by the same number.

يمكننا تبسيط الكسر بقسمة البسط والمقام على نفس الرقم.

$\frac{10}{40}$ ⇨ $\frac{10 \div 10}{40 \div 10} = \frac{1}{4}$ So $\frac{10}{40} = \frac{1}{4}$

Help your child practice simplifying fractions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتدرب على تبسيط الكسور الاعتيادية.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. In the ...., the smoke from the cars covered the stars.
   a) town b) city c) cave d) lake
2. The noise was incredibly ....
   a) low b) slow c) loud d) light
3. The city is exciting but it's too ....
   a) happy b) sad c) good d) scary
4. The country life is ....
   a) quieter b) longer c) shorter d) faster

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Mice live in ....
   a) houses b) apartments c) trees d) holes
2. The city is full of .... lights.
   a) bright b) dark c) blue d) pale
3. We can .... a train.
   a) sleep b) play c) catch d) go
4. The .... from cars covered the stars.
   a) smoke b) fog c) water d) light
5. I can see two ....
   a) a rat b) mice c) a mouse d) mouse
6. Life in the country is .... than life in the city.
   a) taller b) longer c) better d) bigger
7. Life in the city is ....
   a) exciting b) excited c) delighted d) pleased

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

happy - voice - train - corner - mice

There were two mice. The two 1) .... went to the city. They went by 2) .... They heard a cat's 3) .... They ran around the 4) .... They were very scared.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse was pleased. He gave his friend grass and seeds. The city mouse said,"Thank you. You know, the city is pretty and full of bright lights, why don't you come and see?" The country mouse was delighted and very excited. The city mouse stopped eating and said, "There's no reason to wait. We can catch a train at eight."

A) Choose the correct word.

1) The country mouse gave his friend grass and ....
a) beans b) seeds c) potatoes d) rice

2) The underlined word "pretty" means ....
a) sad b) bad c) busy d) beautiful

B) Answer the following questions.

3) How can they go to the city? ....

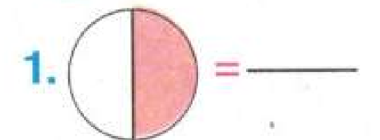
4) How was the country mouse? ....

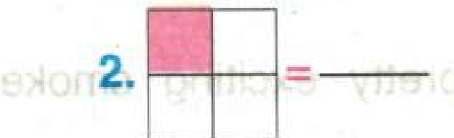
5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

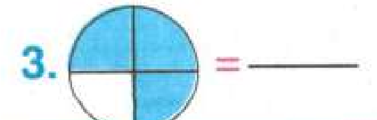
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

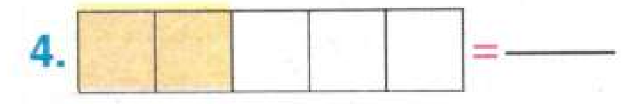
1. The donkey has four .... (foot).
2. The lion has sharp .... (tooth).
3. I saw three .... (mouse).
4. The .... (child) are playing in the park.

6 Look and write the fraction. انظر واكتب الكسر.

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

7 Read and tick (✓) or (✗).
اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (✗).

1. $\frac{1}{2} = \frac{3}{6}$ ( )
2. $\frac{1}{8} > \frac{5}{10}$ ( )
3. $\frac{1}{4} < \frac{2}{8}$ ( )
4. $\frac{2}{3} = \frac{3}{8}$ ( )



8 Read and match.
اقرأ وصل.

hole	/ei/	*smoke*
light	/i:/	*my*
see	/ai/	*train*
	/ou/	

9 Color the shape according to the fraction.
لون الشكل حسب الكسر.

1. $\frac{1}{2}$
2. $\frac{2}{4}$
3. $\frac{1}{3}$
4. $\frac{3}{6}$

10 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Guiding words: **City life**

(pretty - exciting - smoke)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (4 & 5) Writing & Project

Vocabulary المفردات

first day	اليوم الأول	town	مدينة
neighbor	جار	nervous	متوتر - عصبي
neighborhood	الحي السكني	electricity	كهرباء
backpack	حقيبة الظهر	shoe store	محل أحذية
pants	بنطال	gate	بوابة
gas cars	سيارات تعمل بالغاز	kind	عطوف
shopping mall	مركز تسوق	modern	حديث

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
cry	يبكي	cried
remember	يتذكر	remembered
stay	يقيم / يبقى	stayed
carry	يحمل	carried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
put on	يلبس - يرتدي	put on
go	يذهب	went
speak	يتحدث	spoke
drive	يقود / يسوق	drove

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It was fun!	كان الأمر ممتعًا!	do a project	يقوم بمشروع
start school	يبدأ الدراسة	as much as possible	بقدر الإمكان
stay at home	يبقى في البيت	find out	يكتشف
play with	يلعب بـ	much cleaner	أكثر نظافة
on Saturdays	في أيام السبت	shopping area	منطقة تسوق
put on = wear	يرتدى	then and now	في الماضي والحاضر
like this	مثل ذلك	(be) called	يُسمى

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen, read, and answer.

استمع واقرأ وأجب.

My first day of school

by Younis

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan. I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family.

I wanted to play with my toys, I didn't want to go to school.

I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school.

At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom. The teacher asked me to sit next to a boy called Marwan.

The teacher was very kind.

We studied math and played games; it was fun!

The next day, I wasn't nervous.

I was excited. I wanted to see my new friend, Marwan. I wanted to learn math and I wanted to go to school.



أتذكر يومي الأول في المدرسة، كنت في السادسة من عمري، وكنت أعيش في أسوان. كنت متوترًا للغاية. وأحببت البقاء في المنزل مع عائلتي. أردت أن ألعب بألعابي، لم أرغب في الذهاب إلى المدرسة.

ارتديت تي شيرت أزرق، وسروالًا (بنطلون) رماديًا، وحذاءً أسودًا. حملت حقيبتي. مشيت أنا وأمي إلى المدرسة.

عند بوابة المدرسة أردت أن أبكي. قلت وداعًا ودخلت الفصل. طلبت مني المعلمة أن أجلس بجانب ولد يسمى (مروان). كانت المعلمة لطيفة جدًا. درسنا الرياضيات ولعبنا الألعاب. كان الأمر ممتعًا.

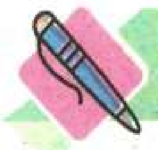
في اليوم التالي، لم أكن متوترًا. كنت متحمسًا. أردت أن أرى صديقي الجديد مروان. كنت أرغب في تعلم الرياضيات وأردت الذهاب إلى المدرسة.

1) How old was Younis? ....

2) Where did Younis live? ....

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



How to plan your writing

1- Write notes about the topic.

2- Write the topic sentence.

3- Write the details in the form of paragraph.

4- Write the conclusion.

5- Review the spelling and punctuation marks.

Note

When we write notes, we use key words. We do not write sentences. We can use our notes to plan writing.

عندما ندوّن الملاحظات، فإننا نستخدم الكلمات الأساسية ولا نكتب جملًا. كما يمكننا استخدام الملاحظات للتخطيط للكتابة.

Example Write about your first day of school.

Notes:

- First day
- six years
- T-shirt - pants
- nervous
- teacher - kind

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I put on a green T-shirt and black pants. I was very nervous. The teacher was very kind. I liked my school. It was fun!

Help your child write about a memory.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن إحدى الذكريات.

Project

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

What is different now in Seleem's town?

My town then and now

We are doing a history project in school about our town. We looked at old photos. We spoke to our older neighbors to find out as much as possible.

نقوم بعمل بحث تاريخي في المدرسة عن مدينتنا. نظرنا إلى الصور القديمة. تحدثنا إلى جيراننا الأكبر سنًا لنعرف أكبر قدر ممكن من المعلومات.



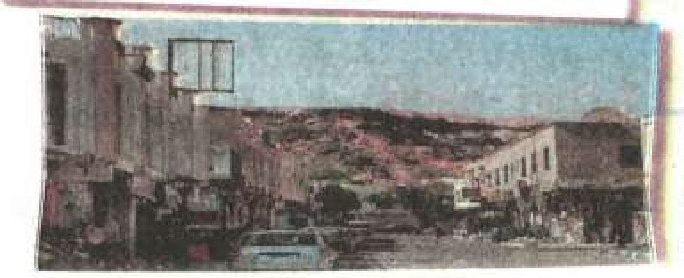
Grandma says that her mom and dad drove cars like this. All the cars were gas cars. They were very noisy.

تقول الجدة إن أمها وأباها كانا يقودان سيارات كهذه. كانت جميع السيارات تعمل بالوقود. كانت صاخبة جدًا.



Now we have a car that uses electricity and gas; it's much cleaner and quieter.

الآن لدينا سيارة تسير بالكهرباء والغاز. إنها أكثر نظافة وأكثر هدوءًا.



Our town had a shopping area, but it was very old. Dad worked in a shoe store on Saturdays.

كانت مدينتنا بها منطقة تسوّق، لكنها كانت قديمة جدًا. كان أبي يعمل في متجر أحذية أيام السبت.



Today we have a big modern shopping mall, but I don't like shopping! I want to play football.

اليوم لدينا مركز تسوق حديث وكبير، ولكن أنا لا أحب التسوق! أريد أن ألعب كرة القدم.

Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. .... says that his mom and dad drove gas cars.
   a) Father b) Mother c) Grandpa d) Grandma
2. Gas cars were very ....
   a) noisy b) quiet c) clean d) good
3. Our town had a cleaner area but it was very ....
   a) new b) modern c) old d) far
4. My dad worked in a .... store on Saturdays.
   a) clothes b) shoe c) book d) plastic

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I .... my first day of school.
   a) remember b) play c) watch d) can
2. I like staying .... home.
   a) at b) for c) on d) to
3. I put .... a blue T-shirt.
   a) in b) to c) at d) on
4. .... cars use electricity and gas.
   a) Old b) Modern c) Big d) Bad
5. The school .... is very big.
   a) pen b) art c) ruler d) gate
6. I carried my .... to school.
   a) car b) backpack c) door d) desk

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

put - nervous - first - see - staying

My name is Hend. I remember my 1) .... day of school. I was seven years old. I lived in Alexandria. I was very 2) .... and I didn't want to go to school. I like 3) .... at home with my family. I 4) .... on a red T-shirt and gray pants. I met my new friend who is called Aya. The next day, I wasn't nervous, and I wanted to see my new friend.



4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan. I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys. I didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school. The teacher was very <u>kind</u>. We studied math and played games; it was fun!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) The writer was very .... at the first day of school.

a) happy b) excited c) nervous d) sad

2) The underlined word "kind" means ....

a) bad b) nice c) strong d) ugly

B) Answer the following questions.

3) How did the writer go to school? ....

4) What did the writer study? ....

5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

how did you feel at school

....



6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Your first day of school

Guiding questions:

- How old were you? - How did you feel? - What did you wear?

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Review on Unit (7)

Vocabulary

the Nile	النيل	river	نهر	delighted	مسرور - مبتهج
building	مبنى	village	قرية	excited	متحمس
city	مدينة	curious	شغوف	mouse/mice	فأر - فئران
desert	صحراء	visitors	زائرين	moral	الدرس المستفاد
forest	غابة	quiet	هادئ	catch a train	يلحق القطار
mountain	جبل	metal box	صندوق معدني	the country	الريف
oasis	واحة	pleased	مسرور	fraction	كسر

Language

The Past Simple Tense

Usage

* يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

e.g. - We played football on this street.

Form - The second form of the verb.

* التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Negative Subject (فاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. - We didn't play football on this street.

(Yes / No) question Did + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)...?

e.g. - Did you go to the market? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question Q.W + did + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)...?

e.g. - When did you get up? - I got up at seven o'clock.

Keywords

yesterday	أمس	ago	منذ
last (week /...)	(الأسبوع/...) الماضي	in the past	في الماضي

e.g. -I studied English yesterday.

Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن :

"The Nile"

The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It is about 6,670 kilometers long. It has two branches in Egypt. It is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles.

"My memories"

I used to live in a small village. There were many green trees and grass. The streets were very quiet. I played with my friends on these streets.

"My first day of school"

My name is Sara. I remember my first day of school. I put on my pink T-shirt and black pants. My dad drove me to school. I was nervous. The teacher was kind and I liked her.

"My neighborhood then and now"

I live in a small town. I live with my grandpa and grandma. My neighborhood is different now. The buildings were small and old. Now they are tall and modern. Grandpa drove an old car. Now we have a car that uses electricity.

Help your child learn how to write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكتب فقرة.

Dictation on Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning
....	مدينة
....	غابة
....	واحة
....	قرية

Word	Meaning
....	مبنى
....	صحراء
....	جبل
....	نهر

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning
....	شارع
....	يسحب
....	فضولي
....	زوار
....	يتساءل

Word	Meaning
....	شاحنة
....	يحفر
....	يدفن
....	متحمس
....	هادىء

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning
....	مسرور
....	مدينة
....	فأر
....	عالي الصوت
....	دخان
....	صوت (الإنسان)

Word	Meaning
....	حفرة - جحر
....	أضواء
....	فئران
....	جميلة
....	ضوضاء
....	خائف

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning
....	متوتر
....	بوابة
....	سيارات تعمل بالغاز
....	جار

Word	Meaning
....	منطقة تسوق
....	حقيبة ظهر
....	الحي السكني
....	محل أحذية

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (7)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The Nile brings life to the whole of ....

   a) France b) Egypt c) China d) England

2. The Nile is about .... kilometers long.

   a) 6.670 b) 6.550 c) 6.500 d) 6.400

3. It's like travelling to the center of the ....

   a) Mars b) Earth c) Venus d) Mercury

4. The Nile has two .... in Egypt.

   a) floors b) canels c) lakes d) branches

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The Nile has two .... in Egypt.

   a) animals b) visitors c) birds d) branches

2. The .... is very high. I can't climb it.

   a) lake b) mountain c) river d) city

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

crops - weather - balls - trees - neighbors

I'm Ali and I live with my family. We live near the river and there are lots of 1) .... all around us. The 2) .... is nice and our 3) .... are very friendly. We grow a lot of 4) ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Last week, I visited my friend in Cairo. I traveled by train. The weather was very hot. There were many cars and the noise was loud. I stayed in his house for two days. Cairo is exciting and **pretty**. I thanked my friend. I went back to my village in the evening.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) Last week, I visited my friend in ....
   a) Cairo b) Luxor c) Aswan d) Tanta
2) The underlined word "pretty" means ....
   a) ugly b) beautiful c) bad d) dirty

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Do you think the writer loved Cairo? ....
4) When did you go back to your village? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Yesterday, we .... (play) football in the park.
2. Grandpa's village .... (is) quiet in the past.
3. We .... (find) a metal box in the ground last year.
4. Last Friday, I .... (visit) my grandparents.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

how long is the Nile

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Grandpa's village

Guiding words: (lived - quiet - no cars)

....

....

....

Al- Azhar Corner خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
   a) shortest b) widest c) tallest d) longest
2. The Nile has .... branches in Egypt.
   a) ninety b) two c) four d) ten
3. The Nile .... lives in the Nile.
   a) chameleon b) lizard c) crocodile d) rats

2) Read and complete the dialogue with:

long - branches - about - two

Sara : Let's do this quiz.
Mariam : What's it 1) .... ?
Sara : The Nile. It's very interesting.
Mariam : How long is it?
Sara : It's about 6,670 kilometers 2) ....
Mariam : How many 3) .... does it have in Egypt?
Sara : It has 4) .... branches in Egypt.

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Nile is .... for different kinds of fish.
   a) flat b) block c) apartment d) home
2. My little brother asks my mom a lot of questions. He is ....
   a) curious b) happy c) hungry d) sad
3. I was .... when I saw the lion.
   a) happy b) scared c) kind d) thirsty
4. Heba .... the kitchen yesterday.
   a) clean b) cleaning c) cleans d) cleaned
5. What .... you do last weekend?
   a) did b) do c) does d) were

4) Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1) crops - grow - Farmers - the - near - river - .
2) his - Ali - painted - room - Friday - last - .
3) have - in - three - room - We - lights - this - .
4) They - a big - have - shopping - modern - mall - .
5) did - feel - How - you - school - at - ?

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



We had fun

قضينا وقتًا ممتعًا

In this unit students will ...

- find out how to use quantifiers.
- practice using past simple irregular verbs.
- discuss and write about festivals.
- read about Egyptian festivals and celebrations.
- talk about special family days.
- write about a special day.

Food and drinks

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردّد.



a packet of cookies
عبوة بسكويت (كوكيز)



a bottle of water
زجاجة ماء



a carton of juice
علبة عصير

Quantifiers
محددات الكمية



a slice of cake
شريحة كيك



a bar of chocolate
قالب شوكولاتة



a piece of cheese
قطعة جبن

Help your child use quantifiers.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم محددات الكمية.

Lesson (1)

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

banana	موزة	favorite	محبب - مفضل
lemon	ليمونة	pizza	بيتزا
meat	لحم	semolina	سميد / لباب الخبز
carrot	جزرة	dessert	الحلو (بعد الطعام)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
happen	يحدث	happened
listen	يستمع	listened
work	يعمل	worked
name	يسمى	named

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
drink	يشرب	drank
think	يعتقد	thought
eat	يأكل	ate
find	يجد	found

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

You look a bit green.	تبدو مريضًا.	That's horrible!	هذا فظيع!
What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟	a kilo of	كيلو من
a bottle of cola	زجاجة كولا	a bar of soap	قطعة صابون (صابونة)

Did you know ?

In Morocco, Algeria and Tunisia, there is a famous dish called Couscous. It is semolina with meat and / or vegetables. It can also be eaten with sugar or as a dessert. Do you want to try Couscous?

في المغرب والجزائر وتونس يوجد طبق مشهور يسمى الكسكسي. مكون من السميد باللحم أو الخضراوات. يمكن أيضًا تناوله مع السكر كحلوى . هل ترغب في تجربة الكسكسي؟



Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Mom	: Did you have fun at the party, Reem?	هل استمتعتي في الحفلة يا ريم؟
Reem	: Yes, thank you.	نعم، أشكرك.
Mom	: What's the matter? You look a bit green.	ما الأمر؟ تبدين مريضة.
Reem	: Hmm, I don't feel well.	همم، لا أشعر أني بخير.
Mom	: Oh, dear. Did you eat too much?	أوه يا عزيزتي. هل أكلتِ كثيرًا؟
Reem	: I only had a slice of cake.	تناولت قطعة كيك فقط.
Mom	: Anything else?	هل تناولتي أي شيء آخر؟
Reem	: No... I drank some juice.	لا... تناولت بعض العصير.
Mom	: Some juice?	بعض العصير؟
Reem	: Well, a carton of juice.	حسنًا، علبة عصير.
Mom	: Is that all?	هل هذا كل شيء؟
Reem	: Maybe a bar of chocolate, only a small one ... and a piece of cheese.	ربما قالب شيكولاتة، قطعة صغيرة فقط ... وقطعة جبنة.
Mom	: Cheese and chocolate? That's horrible!	جبنة وشيكولاتة، هذا فظيع!
Reem	: That's why I ate some cookies.	ولهذا السبب أكلت بعض الكعك المحلّى.
Mom	: How many cookies did you eat?	كم كعكة أكلتيها؟
Reem	: A ... packet ... of cookies.	باكو... من الكعك المحلى.
Mom	: Oh, no!	أوه، لا!
Reem	: I was thirsty after all that food, so I had a bottle of water.	كنت عطشانة بعد كل هذا الطعام، لذلك شربت زجاجة مياه.

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

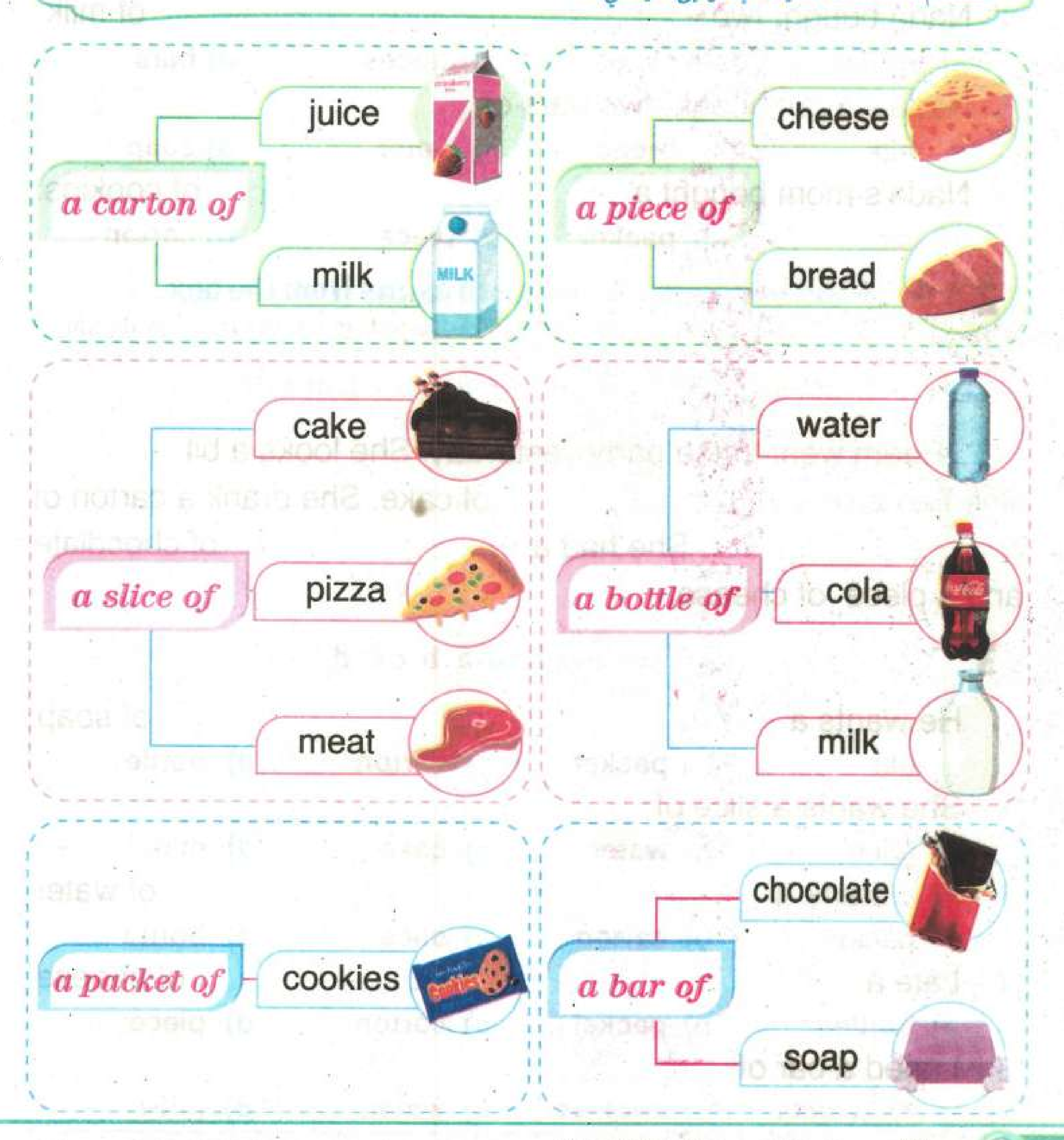
Lesson (1)

Language

Quantifiers

We use the "quantifiers" to indicate the quantity of something.

نستخدم « محددات الكمية » للإشارة إلى كمية شيء ما.



General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Nada and her mum went to the ....
   a) zoo b) library c) supermarket d) park
2. Nada bought two .... of milk.
   a) bottles b) slices c) pieces d) bars
3. Nada's mom bought two bars of ....
   a) milk b) bread c) water d) soap
4. Nada's mom bought a .... of cookies.
   a) bar b) packet c) piece d) carton

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

bar - green - slice - juice - packet

Reem went to the party yesterday. She looks a bit 1) .... She had a 2) .... of cake. She drank a carton of 3) .... She had a 4) .... of chocolate and a piece of cheese.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. He wants a .... of soap.
   a) bar b) packet c) carton d) bottle
2. She wants a slice of ....
   a) juice b) water c) cake d) milk
3. She drank a .... of water.
   a) packet b) carton c) slice d) bottle
4. I ate a .... of cheese.
   a) bottle b) packet c) carton d) piece
5. I need a bar of ....
   chocolate b) cookies c) water d) juice

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6. Mazen ate a .... of cookies.
   a) slice b) bottle c) carton d) packet
7. Mona ate a slice of ....
   a) cookies b) juice c) meat d) water
8. I want a bottle of ....
   a) meat b) pizza c) chocolate d) cola
9. I drank a carton of ....
   a) juice b) chocolate c) meat d) cake
10. I bought a carton .... milk.
   a) in b) of c) at d) off

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I ate a .... (slice) of cookies.
2. Mona drinks a .... (bar) of water.
3. My mother bought a .... (bottle) of soap.
4. Reem drank a .... (piece) of juice.
5. My sister ate a .... (packet) of chocolate.
6. Ali drank a .... (carton) of cola.

5 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

reem feels sick. She looks a bit green

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Food and drinks in the party

Guiding words:

(party - a carton of - a slice of)

....

....

Lesson (2) A poem

Vocabulary المفردات

poem	قصيدة	deep	عميق	the day	النهار - اليوم
weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	movie	فيلم	dessert	تخلية - حلوى
beach	شاطئ	trip	رحلة قصيرة	candy	حلوى
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	Damietta	محافظة دمياط	frozen	متجمد
meal	وجبة	lovely	جميلة / رائعة	octopus	أخطبوط

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	taste	يتذوق	tasted
check	يراجع / يفحص	checked	rain	تمطر	rained
use	يستخدم	used	remember	يتذكر	remembered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	feel	يشعر	felt
make	يصنع	made	catch	يمسك / يصطاد	caught
swim	يسبح	swam	freeze	يتجمد	froze
sing	يغني	sang	go	يذهب	went

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

live by	يعيش بجوار	feel happy	يشعر بالسعادة
lovely dish	أكلة رائعة	instead of	بدلًا من
sing a song	يغني أغنية	taste horrible	له مذاق فظيع
feel sick	يشعر بالمرض	frozen yogurt	زبادي مثلج

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Our trip to the Sea

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see
Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea.
We swam in the water, which was deep and blue.
We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too!
Grandpa caught a fish,
Which Grandma made into a lovely dish!
We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert,
Bananas, apples and frozen yogurt.
We saw some old photos and sang a song.
But time was short. The day wasn't long.
We felt happy. It was a day to remember.
We will go again soon, early September!

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



The Past Simple Tense with Irregular verbs

زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة

الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي لأنه لا يوجد قاعدة توضح كيفية تحويلها إلى الماضي

Present		Past	Present		Past
throw	يرمي / يلقي	threw	buy	يشتري	bought
write	يكتب	wrote	hear	يسمع	heard
forget	ينسى	forgot	fly	يطير	flew
say	يقول	said	come	يأتي	came
run	يجري	ran	cut	يقطع	cut
give	يعطي	gave	feel	يشعر	felt

e.g. - I felt happy yesterday.

Negative

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (المصدر) ....

e.g. - I didn't feel happy yesterday.

Question

Yes / No question

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

e.g. - Did you sing a song? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question

Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

e.g. - How did you feel? - I felt happy.

Help your child practice using past simple irregular verbs. ساعد طفلك أن يتدرب على استخدام الأفعال غير المنتظمة في زمن الماضي البسيط.

Lesson (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Last weekend we .... to Damietta.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going
2. The boys .... in the sea yesterday.
   a) swim b) swam c) swims d) swum
3. We .... lots of fish in the sea last weekend.
   a) see b) has seen c) sees d) saw
4. Grandpa .... a fish yesterday.
   a) catch b) catches c) caught d) catching
5. We ate a meal and .... a healthy dessert.
   a) having b) has c) have d) had
6. Last weekend we .... happy.
   a) feeling b) feel c) feels d) felt
7. They .... pizza last week.
   a) eat b) eats c) ate d) eating
8. The day .... too long.
   a) were b) was c) are d) being
9. I .... my swimming test yesterday.
   a) have b) has c) having d) had
10. I .... to the beach last year.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. What .... (do) you do yesterday?
2. He .... (fly) his kite yesterday.
3. My aunt .... (come) to visit us yesterday.
4. What did they .... (drank) at the party yesterday?
5. We .... (watch) an interesting movie last night.
6. I .... (forget) my book last Monday.
7. My father .... (catch) a big fish three days ago.
8. I didn't .... (had) meat yesterday.
9. Did your mom .... (made) a delicious cake yesterday?
10. Where .... (were) you go yesterday?

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Last weekend we went to ....
   a) Aswan   b) Luxor   c) Damietta   d) Cairo
2. Grandpa and grandma live by the ....
   a) sea   b) river   c) mountain   d) farm
3. We .... in water.
   a) played   b) swam   c) ran   d) sang
4. .... caught a fish.
   a) Dad   b) Mom   c) Grandma   d) Grandpa

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The water was .... and blue.
   a) delighted   b) happy   c) sad   d) deep
2. Grandpa .... a fish yesterday.
   a) drank   b) played   c) caught   d) read
3. We saw some old photos and .... a song.
   a) gave   b) sang   c) made   d) did
4. Last weekend we .... to Damietta.
   a) go   b) goes   c) went   d) going
5. We had ice-cream for ....
   a) desert   b) dessert   c) dish   d) date
6. I .... too much candy yesterday.
   a) eat   b) eating   c) ate   d) eats
7. What did you .... last weekend?
   a) doing   b) does   c) did   d) do
8. I ...... a cake, but I used salt instead of sugar. It tasted horrible.
   a) eat   b) eats   c) ate   d) eating
9. Last night I .... very tired.
   a) is   b) was   c) are   d) were
10. Where did you .... yesterday?
   a) go   b) goes   c) went   d) going

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2)

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

fish - swam - visited - sea - deep

We went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the 1) .... We 2) .... in the water, which was 3) .... and blue. We saw lots of 4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too! Grandpa caught a fish, which Grandma made into a lovely dish! We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert, bananas, apples and frozen yogurt. We saw some old photos and sang a song. But time was short. The day wasn't long. We felt happy. It was a day to remember. We will go again soon, early September!

A) Choose the correct word.

1) Last weekend we went to ....

a) Alexandria b) Damietta c) Luxor d) Cairo

2) The underlined word "healthy" is the opposite of ....

a) unhealthy b) nice c) good d) kind

B) Answer the following questions.

3) When did you go to Damietta?

....

4) What did you see?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We .... (swim) in the sea yesterday.
2. Grandpa .... (catch) a fish last Friday.
3. They .... (have) ice-cream for dessert last night.
4. We .... (see) lots of fish last holiday.
5. .... (Next) weekend, we went to Aswan.
6. What did you .... (eats)?
7. Where .... (do) you go last Monday?
8. I .... (watch) a great movie last night.
9. We .... (eat) too much candy. We felt sick.
10. I was happy when I .... (hear) the good news.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

omar and mazen swam in the sea.

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A trip to the sea

Guiding words:

(weekend - Damietta - sea)

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) CLIL: Social Studies

Vocabulary المفردات

Ramadan	شهر رمضان	celebrate (d)	يحتفل
Shawwal	شهر شوال	celebration	احتفال
Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر	festival	مهرجان / عيد
Eid Mubarak	عيد مبارك	sunset	غروب الشمس
kahk	كحك / كعك	region	منطقة
fast (v)	يصوم	nuts	مكسرات
mosque	مسجد	bakery	مخبز
honey	عسل	delicious	لذيذ

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Coptic Easter	عيد القيامة القبطي	information	معلومات	photos	صور
also	أيضًا	month	شهر	until	لغاية / حتى
Islamic	إسلامي	special	خاص / مميز	during	أثناء
moon	قمر	park	حديقة عامة	people	ناس

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

want to	يريد أن	do better	يؤدي بشكل أفضل
is called	يُدعى - يُسمّى	eat delicious food	يأكل طعامًا لذيذًا
during the day	أثناء النهار	make kahk	يصنع كحك
think about	يفكر في	buy from	يشتري من
spend time with	يقضي وقتًا مع	teach about	يُعلم عن

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Eid Al-Fitr in Egypt عيد الفطر في مصر



Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset.
In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about the things they did well and the things they want to do better. It is also a time to help other people.

عيد الفطر هو عيد إسلامي. الشهر الذي يسبق العيد يسمى رمضان. في رمضان يصوم الكثير من المسلمين أثناء النهار. هذا يعني أنهم لا يأكلون أو يشربون حتى غروب الشمس. في شهر رمضان، يفكر الناس في العام الماضي. يفكرون في الأشياء التي فعلوها بشكل جيد والأشياء التي يريدون القيام بها بشكل أفضل. إنه أيضًا وقت لمساعدة الآخرين.

When is Eid Al-Fitr? ما موعد عيد الفطر؟

That's a very good question! It's different every year. Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called *Shawwal*. The month starts when people see the new moon.

هذا سؤال جيد جدًا! إنه مختلف كل عام. يصادف اليوم الأول من الشهر الهجري العاشر، ويسمى شوال. يبدأ الشهر عندما يرى الناس هلال الشهر الجديد.

Lots of Kahk! الكثير من الكحك!



Kahk are delicious cookies. People eat kahk to celebrate. They have nuts, sugar, and honey in them. Many families make kahk but you can buy them from a bakery, too.

الكحك هو كعك محلى لذيذ. يأكل الناس الكحك للاحتفال. يحتوي الكحك على مكسرات وسكر وعسل بداخله. تصنع العديد من العائلات الكحك ولكن يمكنك شراؤه من المخبز أيضًا.

"Eid Mubarak" « عيد مبارك »



Eid is a time of celebration and for being happy. People say 'Eid Mubarak' to their friends. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families. They eat delicious food and celebrate!

العيد هو وقت الاحتفال والسعادة، يقول الناس «عيد مبارك» لأصدقائهم. يذهب الناس إلى المسجد ويقضون الوقت مع عائلاتهم، يأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا ويحتفلون!

Help your child read about Eid Al-Fitr.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن عيد الفطر.

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Sham El-Nessim

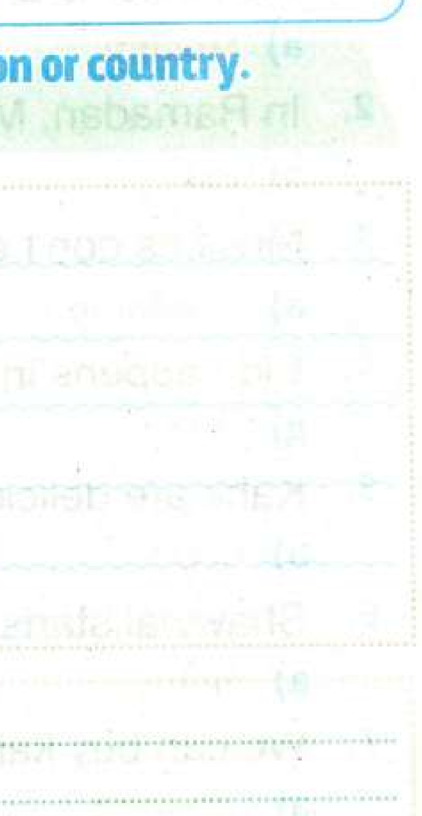
Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest festival.
Sham El-Nessim is celebrated every year on Easter Monday, which is the day after Easter.
All Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim.
During the festival, people eat fesikh (dried fish), lettuce, green onions, termes (beans), and boiled eggs.
People like to paint boiled eggs, have picnics and spend time outside.

شم النسيم هو أقدم احتفال في مصر. يتم الاحتفال بشم النسيم كل عام في يوم الاثنين في عيد الفصح، وهو اليوم التالي لعيد الفصح. يحتفل كل المصريين بشم النسيم، يأكل الناس الفسيخ (السمك المجفف) والخس والبصل الأخضر والترمس (بقول) والبيض المسلوق. يحب الناس تلوين البيض المسلوق والنزهات وقضاء الوقت في الخارج.



Think about another festival in your region or country. Complete the table, then write.

Name of the festival	
When is it?	
What do people do?	
What do people eat?	
What do people wear?	
Why do you like it?	



....

....

....

....

Help your child write about a festival in his/ her country.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن احتفال في بلده.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim ....
   a) festival b) school day c) holiday d) sports day
2. The .... before Eid is called Ramadan.
   a) day b) year c) week d) month
3. Many Muslims .... during the day of Ramadan.
   a) play b) fast c) eat d) drink
4. In Ramadan, people think about the .... year.
   a) next b) present c) second d) past

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Eid Al-Fitr is a .... festival.
   a) Muslim b) Coptic c) Christian d) Jewish
2. In Ramadan, Muslims .... during the day.
   a) eat b) drink c) sleep d) fast
3. Muslims don't eat or drink until .... in Ramadan.
   a) sunshine b) midnight c) sunset d) sunlight
4. Eid happens in the .... day of the 10th Islamic month.
   a) first b) second c) third d) fourth
5. Kahk are delicious ....
   a) toast b) cookies c) bread d) cake
6. Shawwal starts when people see the new ....
   a) moon b) sun c) earth d) sky
7. We can buy kahk from a ....
   a) grocer's b) florist's c) bakery d) butcher's
8. Eid is a time of .... and for being happy.
   a) participation b) celebration c) evaporation d) information

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

9. In Eid Al-Fitr, we eat delicious food and ....
   a) study b) watch c) celebrate d) work
10. Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest ....
   a) food b) club c) festival d) playground

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

bakery - celebrate - eat - nuts - families

Kahk are delicious cookies. People eat kahk to 1) .... They have 2) ...., sugar, and honey in them. Many 3) .... make kahk but you can buy them from a 4) ...., too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset.
Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, Shawwal. People eat kahk to celebrate. They spend time with their families.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1) The text is about ....
   a) Eid Al-Fitr b) Mother's Day c) Sham El-Nessim d) Coptic Easter
2) The underlined word "before" is opposite to ....
   a) next b) after c) on d) in

B) Answer the following questions.

3) What is the month before Eid?
....
4) When do Muslims fast in Ramadan?
....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1) are - delicious - Kahk - cookies - .

....

2) from - buy - We - kahk - a bakery - .

....

3) Egyptians - Sham - All - celebrate - El-Nessim - .

....

6 Punctuate the following sentences.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية

1) we celebrate Eid Al-Fitr after Ramadan

....

2) when is Eid Al-Fitr

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Eid Al-Fitr

Guiding words:

(festival - Ramadan - kahk)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (4 & 5) Writing & Project

Vocabulary المفردات

great-grandma	الجدة الكبرى	special	خاص / مميز
picnic	نزهة / وجبة في الهواء الطلق	together	معًا / سويًا
birthday	يوم ميلاد	fun	متعة / مرح

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

huge	ضخم	stars	نجوم
garden	حديقة (المنزل)	Christmas tree	شجرة الكريسماس
countries	بلاد / دول	colored balls	كرات ملونة
aunt	عمه / خالة	games	ألعاب
uncle	عم / خال	lights	أضواء

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
decorate	يزين	decorated	represent	يمثل / يرمز إلى	represented
play	يلعب	played	throw	يرمي / يلقي	threw

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

come together	يجتمعون	chocolate cake	تورتة الشوكولاتة
play with	يلعب مع	Happy Birthday!	عيد ميلاد سعيدًا
have fun	يقضي وقتًا ممتعًا	the whole family	العائلة بأكملها
had a party	أقام حفلًا	special day	يوم مميز

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Great-grandma's birthday

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old! All my family came together to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came.

منذ عامين، كان لدينا حفل مميز للغاية. كانت جدتي الكبرى تبلغ من العمر ٩٠ عامًا ! اجتمع كل أفراد عائلتي للاحتفال. جاء جميع أبناء عمي وعماتي وأعمامي.

We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and I drank a bottle of orange juice. I also ate some salad and fruit.

قمنا بعمل وجبة ضخمة في حديقة عمتي. كان هناك الكثير من الطعام: سلطة ولحم وسمك وخبز وكعك وبسكويت وفواكه. أكلت شريحة كبيرة من تورتة الشوكولاتة وشربت زجاجة عصير برتقال. وأكلت أيضًا بعض السلطة والفاكهة.



I played games with my cousins all afternoon. We ran. We threw a ball. We sang "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma.

لعبت ألعابًا مع أبناء عمي طوال فترة الظهيرة. ركضنا وقذفنا الكرة وأنشدنا «عيد ميلاد سعيد» لجدتنا الكبرى.

It was a very special day because our great-grandma was very happy. She liked seeing the whole family. We all had fun.

لقد كان يومًا مميزًا جدًا لأن جدتنا الكبرى كانت سعيدة جدًا وأحبت رؤية أفراد الأسرة بأكملها. لقد استمتعنا جميعًا.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lessons (4 & 5)



Read again and answer the questions.

1) What was the special day?

....

2) Who was at the party?

....

3) What did the writer eat?

....

4) What did the writer do?

....

5) Why was it a special day?

....

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

What do people put on Christmas trees?

ماذا يضع الناس على أشجار الكريسماس؟

In many countries, people decorate Christmas trees at Christmas. These trees are always green. The trees represent new life. People decorate the trees with lights, colored balls, and stars.



في كثير من الدول، يزين الناس أشجار عيد الميلاد في عيد الميلاد (الكريسماس). هذه الأشجار دائمًا خضراء. تمثل الأشجار حياة جديدة. يزين الناس الأشجار بالأضواء والكرات الملونة والنجوم.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We had a huge picnic in my aunt's ....
   a) house b) park c) school d) garden
2. There was lots of ....
   a) toys b) food c) books d) cars
3. I ate a big slice of ....
   a) cheese b) meat c) chocolate cake d) bread
4. I drank a .... of orange juice.
   a) bottle b) slice c) bar d) piece

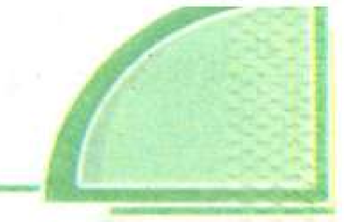
2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Yesterday we .... a special party.
   a) has b) had c) having d) have
2. My .... -grandma was 90 years old.
   a) great b) young c) thin d) small
3. We had a .... picnic in my aunt's garden.
   a) little b) sad c) huge d) tiny
4. We .... "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma.
   a) sang b) ate c) drank d) threw
5. She liked seeing the .... family.
   a) wall b) call c) whole d) hole
6. We all .... fun.
   a) did b) had c) made d) played
7. I drank a .... of orange juice.
   a) bottle b) slice c) pocket d) piece
8. I ate a big .... of chocolate cake.
   a) bottle b) slice c) carton d) pocket
9. People .... Christmas trees at Christmas.
   a) sleep b) eat c) drink d) decorate
10. The trees .... new life.
    a) represent b) want c) read d) sell

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

celebrate - Happy Birthday - party - played - delicious

My grandpa's birthday was yesterday. We had a nice 1) .... at my grandparents' house. All the family came to 2) .... his birthday. The food was 3) .... We sang "4) .... " to him. My grandpa was very happy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Two days ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old! All my family came together to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came. We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit. My great-grandma was very happy to see the whole family. We sang "Happy Birthday" to her. We had fun.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) My great-grandma was .... years old.

a) 70 b) 80 c) 90 d) 100

2) All my .... came to the party.

a) teachers b) friends c) doctors d) aunts

B) Answer the following questions.

3) What did you do in your aunt's garden?

....

4) Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Two years ago we .... (have) a special party.
2. I .... (eat) a big slice of chocolate cake yesterday.
3. I .... (play) games with my cousins last week.
4. It .... (is) a nice party because my great-grandma was happy.
5. My great-grandma .... (like) seeing the whole family last year.

6 Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1. great-grandma's birthday was special

....

2. i ate some fruit

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A special day

Guiding elements:

- What was the special day?
- Who was there?
- What did you eat?
- What did you drink?

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Review on Unit (8)

Quantifiers محددات الكمية

a carton of juice	علبة من العصير	a bar of soap	قطعة صابون
a packet of cookies	عبوة بسكويت	a bottle of water	زجاجة ماء
a slice of meat	قطعة لحم	a slice of cake	قطعة كيك
a piece of cheese	قطعة من الجبن	a carton of milk	عبوة حليب
a bar of chocolate	قالب شيكولاتة	a piece of bread	قطعة خبز

Others

Shawwal	شوال	fast	يصوم	poem	قصيدة
kahk	كعك	grandma	جدة	Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر
mosque	مسجد	friendly	ودود	surprised	مندهش
celebration	احتفال	picnic	نزهة / وجبة	decorate	يُزَيِّن

Social Studies



Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival.



Kahk are delicious cookies.



All Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim.



During Sham El-Nessim, people eat fesikh and colored eggs.

Help your child revise unit (8).

ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع الوحدة الثامنة.

Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

"A day when you had fun"

I went to Damietta to visit my Grandma and Grandpa. I went there with my family. I played and swam in the sea. I ate delicious fish. I played games with my cousins. We had fun.

"Eid Al-Fitr"

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. We celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. We have kahk and play. We are very happy.

"Sham El-Nessim"

Sham El-Nessim is a national holiday in Egypt. It's celebrated in spring. We go to the parks with our families and spend the day outside. We usually have fesikh, salted fish,and colored eggs.

"Grandma's birthday"

Last week,we had a very special party . My grandma was 60 years old. All my family came together to celebrate. We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food.

Help your child learn how to write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكتب فقرة.

Dictation on Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning
....	قالب شوكولاتة
....	زجاجة ماء
....	قطعة جبن

Word	Meaning
....	عبوة كوكيز
....	علبة عصير
....	شريحة كيك

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning
....	يسبح
....	يرى
....	يأكل
....	يغني
....	يصطاد
....	يشعر

Word	Meaning
....	سبح
....	رأى
....	أكل
....	غنّى
....	اصطاد
....	شعر

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning
....	رمضان
....	يحتفل
....	احتفال
....	مخبز

Word	Meaning
....	عيد الفطر
....	يصوم
....	كحك
....	مسجد

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning
....	نزهة
....	خاص / مميز
....	يزين

Word	Meaning
....	الجدة الكبرى
....	مرح
....	شجرة الكريسماس

Help your child dictate the words.

ساعد طفلك على إملاء الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (8)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Eid is a time of .... and for being happy.
   a) celebration b) watering c) studying d) planting
2. People say " Eid Mubarak" to their ....
   a) killers b) enemies c) fans d) friends
3. People go to the .... and spend time with their families.
   a) temple b) mosque c) church d) cave
4. They eat .... food and celebrate.
   a) bad b) hard c) delicious d) unhealthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Eid is a time of .... and for being happy.
   a) celebration b) fast c) work d) irrigation
2. I drank a .... of water.
   a) slice b) bottle c) bar d) piece

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

represent - lights - dark - green - decorate

People like to celebrate around the world. In many countries, people 1) .... Christmas trees at Christmas. These trees are always 2) .... The trees 3) .... new life. People decorate the trees with 4) .... , colored balls, and stars.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the text and answer the questions. إقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Sham El-Nessim is a national holiday in Egypt. It is Egypt's oldest festival. Sham El-Nessim is celebrated every year on Easter Monday, which is the day after Easter. All Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim people go to the parks with their families and spend the day outside. People usually have fesikh, salted fish, and colored eggs. They all have fun.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) Sham El-Nessim is a national holiday in ....
   a) London b) America c) Egypt d) France
2) In Sham El-Nessim, people spend the day ....
   a) inside b) outside c) home d) school

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Who celebrates Sham El-Nessim? ....
4) Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. I .... (buy) a packet of cookies yesterday.
2. Last Monday, Ali .... (go) to the park.
3. Heba .... (reads) a comic book last night.
4. My brother .... (wake) up late yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

Amr and mona were at the party

....



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Sham El-Nessim

Guiding words: (celebrate - spring - fesikh)

Al- Azhar Corner خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Last week we went to ....
   a) Giza b) Cairo c) Damietta d) Alexandria
2. Grandparents live by the ....
   a) sea b) club c) school d) river
3. We saw lots of ....
   a) dishes b) fish c) ships d) chicks

2) Read and complete the dialogue with:

swam - Damietta - Where - sea

Reem : Where did you go last weekend?
Toka : I went to 1) .... to see my grandparents.
Reem : 2) .... did they live?
Toka : They lived by the 3) ....
Reem : What did you do there?
Toka : We 4) .... in the water which was deep and blue.

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. "You look a bit green" means you are ....
   a) sick b) happy c) strong d) healthy
2. We .... Sham El-Nessim in spring.
   a) play b) celebrate c) run d) sleep
3. Christmas trees .... new life.
   a) decorate b) throw c) catch d) represent
4. I .... noise last night.
   a) hear b) hears c) heard d) hearing
5. My mom .... very tired yesterday.
   a) is b) was c) has d) does

4) Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1) went - beach - I - to - with - the - my family - .
2) three - drank - We - of - water - bottles - .
3) did - look - Why - Omar - a bit green - ?
4) color - eggs - We - boiled - in - Sham El-Nessim - .
5) decorated - the - Mom - herself - cake - birthday - .

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

February Test

اختبار شهر فبراير

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We went to .... to see my grandparents.
   a) Cairo b) Alexandria c) Tanta d) Aswan
2. We .... in the water.
   a) planted b) swam c) ran d) watched
3. My .... caught a big fish.
   a) dad b) mom c) grandpa d) aunt
4. Grandma made the .... into a lovely dish.
   a) meat b) rice c) fish d) spagetti

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Mice live in .... in the ground.
   a) walls b) halls c) holes d) doors
2. Muslims .... during the days of Ramadan.
   a) climb b) play c) fast d) eat

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

cleaner - noisy - electricity - gas - quiet

We are doing a project at school about the history of cars. In the past, cars were 1) .... cars. They were very 1) .... Now, we have a car that uses 3) .... and gas. It's much 4) .... and quieter.



Read the text and answer the questions. إقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Hi! My name's Sama. I'm in grade four. Last Friday, it was my birthday. I became ten years old. All my family came to celebrate. My father gave me a good present. It was a pet cat. I like cats very much. My cat is white. It has a long tail. It has blue eyes. It likes milk. It likes to run and jump. I love playing with my cat. It makes me happy.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) This text is about " .... ".

a) Sama's school b) Sama's house c) Sama's birthday d) Sama's book

2) Sama's father gave her a pet ....

a) dog b) cat c) horse d) parrot

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

4) When was Sama's birthday? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I .... (do) a research about plants last week.
2. I have a .... (bottles) of water.
3. In the past, my grandpa .... (drive) a gas car.
4. What did he .... (had) for dessert?

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

i want a bar of chocolate

....



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The Nile

Guiding words:

(longest - river - branches)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك على التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



What makes us special

ما يجعلنا مميزين

In this unit students will ...

- read about party games.
- listen about some unusual festivals around the world.
- practice more irregular past simple verb forms.
- explore how to present information.
- write an invitation.
- work in groups to organize a class celebration.

Lesson (1) Games around the world

Key vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

Party Games	ألعاب جماعية	pass the parcel	لعبة تمرير الطرد
hide and seek	لعبة الاستغماية / الغميضة	wrap	يُغلّف / يلف
musical chairs	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية	unwrap	يفتح
rope pulling (tug-of-war)	لعبة شد الحبل		

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

ready	مستعد	birthday	عيد ميلاد	present	هدية
traditional	تقليدي	popular	محبوب / شعبي	exciting	مثير
wide	واسع / عريض	winner	فائز	seeker	الباحث

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
wrap	يلف / يُغلّف	wrapped
cover in	يغطي بـ	covered in
join	ينضم إلى	joined
close	يغلق	closed
count	يعد	counted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
give	يعطي	gave
hold	يمسك	held
take off	ينزع / يخلع	took off
keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept
sit	يجلس	sat
hide	يختبئ	hid

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get together with	يجتمع مع	without	بدون
open presents	يفتح الهدايا	put out	يضع
sit in a circle	يجلسون في دائرة	the last	الأخير
play music	يشغل موسيقى	respect rules	يحترم القواعد
a piece of paper	قطعة من الورق	help others	يساعد الآخرين
listen to others	يستمع إلى الآخرين	take away	يزيل / يبعد

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Party Games

When we get together with our family and friends to celebrate something like a birthday or a wedding, the children often play games. Here are some traditional games people play around the world.

عندما نجتمع مع عائلاتنا وأصدقائنا للاحتفال بشيء ما مثل عيد ميلاد أو زفاف، غالبًا ما يلعب الأطفال ألعابًا. إليكم بعض الألعاب التقليدية التي يلعبها الناس حول العالم.

Pass the parcel لعبة تمرير الطرد

We all love togive presents . It's even more fun toopen presents

How to play:

Wrap a small present and cover it in lots and lots... and lots of paper. The players sit in a circle.

Play some music.

Players give the present to the next person as the music plays. When the music stops, the player holding the present takes off one piece of paper. The player who unwraps the present keeps it.

كلنا نحب أن نقدم الهدايا. و فتح الهدايا أكثر متعة.

طريقة اللعب:

لف هدية صغيرة وقم بتغطيتها بالكثير والكثير.. والكثير من الورق. يجلس اللاعبون في دائرة. قم بتشغيل بعض الموسيقى. يعطي اللاعبون الهدية للشخص التالي أثناء تشغيل الموسيقى عندما تتوقف الموسيقى، يزيل اللاعب الذي يحمل الهدية قطعة من الورق. اللاعب الذي يفتح الهدية يحتفظ بها.

Musical chairs لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية

Run but be ready to sit!

How to play:

Put out some chairs. If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs.

Play some music .

Players run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without the chair is "out". Take away one chair and play again.

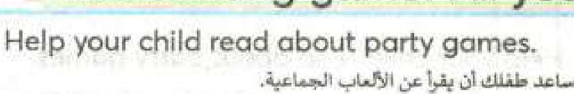
اجري لكن كن مستعدًا للجلوس!

طريقة اللعب:

ضع بعض الكراسي. إذا كان لديك ٦ لاعبين فأنت تحتاج فقط إلى ٥ كراسي. قم بتشغيل بعض الموسيقى. يقوم اللاعبون بالجري حول الكراسي. عندما تتوقف الموسيقى. يجلس الجميع. اللاعب الذي يكون بلا كرسي يكون «خارج اللعبة». استبعد كرسي واحد والعب مرة أخرى.

Hide and seek لعبة الاستغماية / الغميضة

This is a very old and popular game. Many players can join in this exciting game. All you need is a wide place to play it.



Help your child read about party games.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الألعاب الجماعية.



How to play:

One player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the winner.

هذه لعبة قديمة جدًا ومحبوبة.. يمكن للعديد من اللاعبين المشاركة في هذه اللعبة المثيرة. كل ما تحتاجه هو مكان واسع لكي تلعبها. طريقة اللعب: لاعب واحد يسمى (الباحث) يغمض عينيه ويعد حتى عشرة.
يختبئ اللاعبون الآخرون. يحاول الباحث العثور عليهم. يصبح اللاعب الأول الذي يجده الباحث هو الباحث التالي. اللاعب الأخير المتبقي هو الفائز.

Tug-of-war (rope pulling) لعبة شد الحبل



It's a sport with two teams against each other in a test of strength. Children always play it in the park. Each team is trying to pull the rope towards them. The team who pulls strongly is the winner.

هي رياضة ذات فريقين ضد بعضهما البعض في اختبار للقوة. يلعبها الأطفال دائمًا في الحديقة. يحاول كل فريق سحب الحبل تجاههم. الفريق الذي يسحب بقوة هو الفائز.

What do you learn when you play together? ماذا تتعلمون عندما تلعبون مع بعض؟

We learn to: نتعلم أن:

have fun	نستمتع	respect rules	نحترم القواعد
help others	نساعد الآخرين	listen to others	نستمع إلى الآخرين

Pass the parcel

You need people.	You need presents.	You need music.

Musical chairs

You need people.	You need music.	You need to run.	The player without a chair is out.

Hide and seek

You need people.	You need to cover your eyes and play it.	It's better to play it outside.	You need to run.

Help your child read about party games.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الألعاب الجماعية.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Musical .... is a game in which you run but be ready to sit!
   a) tables b) chairs c) desks d) sofas
2. Players run .... the chairs.
   a) under b) behind c) next d) around
3. When the .... stops, everyone sits down.
   a) music b) movie c) play d) water
4. The player without the chair is ....
   a) inside b) on c) out d) by

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. We get .... with our friends to play.
   a) in b) on c) together d) off
2. Children often .... games.
   a) play b) take c) eat d) sleep
3. We all love to .... presents.
   a) drink b) go c) lose d) give
4. Players run .... the chairs.
   a) on b) around c) under d) in
5. Hide and .... is a popular game.
   a) sick b) sack c) seek d) sock
6. We must respect .... when we play.
   a) roles b) ropes c) rides d) rules

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

music - chairs - sits - run - but

Musical chairs is an interesting game. To play it, you can 1) .... but be ready to sit! Put some 2) .... If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs. After that, play some 3) .... Players run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone 4) .... down. The player without a chair is out. Take away one chair and play again.



4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hide and seek: This is a very old and popular game. Many players can join in this exciting game. All you need is a wide place to play it.

How to play:

One player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the winner.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) Hide and seek is a very .... game.
   a) bad b) strong c) popular d) high
2) The last one left is the ....
   a) singer b) winner c) loser d) player

B) Answer the following questions.

3) What do you need to play hide and seek? ....

4) Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

omar and Anas like to play hide and seek

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Guiding words: **Party games**

(games -children -presents)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2) Festivals around the world



Festivals مهرجانات

Cheese rolling	مهرجان دحرجة الجبن	La Tomatina	مهرجان التراشق بالطماطم
Kite festival	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية	Chinese New Year	رأس السنة الصينية

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

string	خيط	dragon	تنين	messy	فوضوي
old clothes	ملابس قديمة	monster	وحش	hill	تل
mud	طين	alive	حي / على قيد الحياة	strange	غريب
envelope	مظروف	weird	غريب	traditions	تقاليد
race	سباق	shape	شكل	inside	داخل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
laugh	يضحك	laughed
wish	يتمنى	wished

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
wear	يرتدي	wore
fall	يقع	fell

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look up	ينظر لأعلى	good luck	حظ جيد/ حظ سعيد
Happy New Year!	عام جديد سعيد!	covered in	مغطى بـ
take a shower	يأخذ دُش	rhyme with	يتناغم صوتيًا مع
feel alive	يشعر أنه على قيد الحياة	take part in	يشارك في
UK = the United Kingdom	المملكة المتحدة	for fun	للمتعة
During my travels	خلال رحلاتي	smiling faces	وجوه مبتسمة
all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم	The rest of	بقية

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

My name is Dina and it's my job to tell you about my travels and to bring the rest of the world into your home. The world is a big, beautiful place. The more we learn about other countries, the better we can understand each other and live together.
This week I'm looking back at some of the weird and wonderful traditions I saw during my travels.

اسمي دينا ووظيفتي أن أخبركم عن رحلاتي وأن أجلب بقية العالم إلى منزلكم. العالم مكان كبير وجميل. كلما عرفنا المزيد عن البلدان الأخرى، كلما كان بإمكاننا فهم بعضنا البعض والعيش معًا بشكل أفضل. هذا الأسبوع، سألقي نظرة على بعض التقاليد الغريبة والرائعة التي رأيتها خلال رحلاتي.



Let's start with this one in the UK, it was one of the strangest things I ever saw. Look, they pushed the round cheese down the hill and hundreds of people ran after it. Why did they do it ? The person who won the race, won the cheese. It was funny (and very strange), but it looked a bit dangerous. Lots of people fell but no body was hurt.

لنبدأ بهذا التقليد في المملكة المتحدة، لقد كان من أغرب الأشياء التي رأيتها على الإطلاق. انظروا لقد دفعوا الجبن المستدير أسفل التل وركض مئات الأشخاص وراءه. لماذا فعلوا ذلك؟ الشخص الذي فاز بالسباق، فاز بالجبن. كان الأمر مضحكًا (وغريبًا جدًا)، لكنه بدا خطيرًا بعض الشيء. سقط الكثير من الناس ولكن لم يصب أحد بأذى.



The next one was in China and many parts of Asia. People at weddings and celebrations gave the children and young people red envelopes.
I asked my friend about this and she told me that there was money inside the envelope and it was their way of saying good luck. The amount of money usually had an even number at the end (like 2,4,6,8 etc.) because they said this was good luck.

كان التالي في الصين وأجزاء كثيرة من آسيا. قدم الناس في الأفراح (حفلات الزفاف) والاحتفالات للأطفال والشباب مظاريف حمراء. سألت صديقتي عن هذا وأخبرتني أن هناك نقودًا داخل الظرف وأن هذه طريقتهم في قول حظًا سعيدًا. عادة ما يكون مبلغ المال رقم زوجي في النهاية (مثل ٢، ٤، ٦، ٨ إلخ) لأنهم قالوا أن هذا يدل على الحظ السعيد.

Help your child learn about some unusual festivals around the world. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن بعض المهرجانات الغريبة حول العالم.



I had lots of fun here, it was called La Tomatina and it was in Spain. It was very messy! Every body threw old tomatoes at each other. I couldn't see anything. After of a few minutes everyone was covered in red tomatoes! Why do they throw old tomatoes? For fun!

لقد استمتعت كثيرًا هنا، وكان يسمى مهرجان التراشق بالطماطم وكان في أسبانيا. لقد كان فوضويًا جدًا! ألقى الجميع الطماطم القديمة على بعضهم البعض. لم أستطع رؤية أي شيء. وبعد دقائق قليلة كان الجميع مغطى بالطماطم الحمراء! لماذا يرمون الطماطم القديمة؟ للمتعة!



This is the fourth one. It was a beautiful kite festival. These happen all over the world, but this one was in India. Hundreds of people, young and old, flew their kites. The sky was full of animals, fish, monsters... I tried to fly one of the kites, it was very difficult!

كان هذا هو الرابع. كان مهرجان طائرات ورقية جميل. يحدث في جميع أنحاء العالم، لكن كان هذا المهرجان في الهند. مئات من الناس، صغارًا وكبارًا طيروا طائراتهم الورقية. كانت السماء مليئة بحيوانات، وأسماك ووحوش. حاولت أن أطير إحدى الطائرات الورقية، كان الأمر صعبًا للغاية!

Well, that's just a few examples of the festivals I saw during my travels. I saw people who wore colorful clothes, who ate delicious food, who did some silly things. Most importantly in all these festivals I saw lots of happy smiling faces.

حسنًا، هذه مجرد أمثلة قليلة من المهرجانات التي رأيتها خلال رحلاتي. رأيت أشخاصًا يرتدون ملابس ملونة، ويأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا، ويفعلون بعض الأشياء السخيفة.
الأهم من ذلك، في كل هذه المهرجانات رأيت الكثير من الوجوه المبتسمة السعيدة.

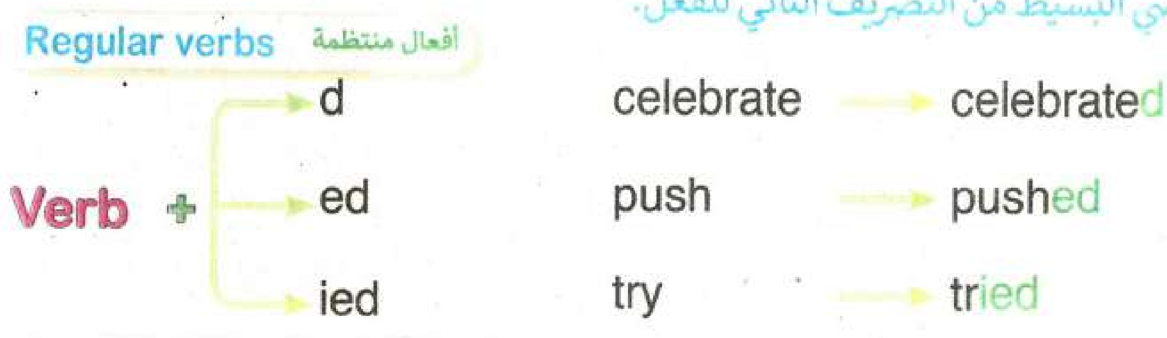
Help your child learn about some unusual festivals around the world. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن بعض المهرجانات الغريبة حول العالم.



Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

يتكون الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة



Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	run	يجري	ran
tell	يخبر	told	fall	يقع	fell
have / has	يمتلك	had	win	يفوز	won
wear	يرتدي	wore	fly	يطير	flew
give	يعطي	gave	say	يقول	said
throw	يلقي	threw	eat	يأكل	ate
read	يقرأ	read	hit	يضرب	hit
run	يجري	ran	go	يذهب	went
make	يصنع	made	be	يكون	was /were
take	يأخذ	took	do	يفعل	did

e.g. We visited Luxor last year. - She saw her friends yesterday.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I .... (see) Heba a few days ago.
2. Ali .... (play) football at the club last weekend.
3. We .... (eats) meat yesterday.
4. Mai .... (wear) a new dress in the party yesterday.
5. Ahmed .... (run) fast and won the race last Friday.

Help your child revise the past simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع زمن الماضي البسيط.



Rhyme القافية

A rhyme:
means one or two words that sound alike, but the meaning is different.
القافية: هي كلمة أو كلمتين لهم نفس النطق الصوتي ولكن يختلفون في المعنى.

Some verbs in the past rhyme with other words.
بعض الأفعال في الماضي تتناغم في الصوت مع كلمات أخرى.

"went"	rhymes with →	tent
"put"	rhymes with →	foot
"ate"	rhymes with →	eight
"read"	rhymes with →	red
"was"	rhymes with →	because
"hit"	rhymes with →	it

Help your child listen to some words that rhyme.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى بعض الكلمات المتناغمة في الصوت.

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The cheese .... is celebrated every year.
   a) rolling b) pulling c) reading d) calling
2. He gave me a red envelope .... me good luck.
   a) playing b) wishing c) wearing d) reading
3. At .... everything is red.
   a) La Tomatina b) Kite festival c) Cheese rolling d) Eid Al-Fitr
4. I fell and I was covered .... mud.
   a) at b) of c) with d) in
5. We must .... old clothes at La Tomatina.
   a) play b) go c) wear d) take
6. Is it easy to .... a kite?
   a) ride b) drive c) fly d) run
7. People .... tomatoes at La Tomatina festival.
   a) drink b) eat c) throw d) run
8. Grandma .... me some money yesterday.
   a) give b) giving c) gave d) gives
9. Paint .... on the floor and mum was angry.
   a) fall b) falling c) fell d) fallen
10. Mom .... me to take a shower yesterday.
    a) tells b) told c) tell d) telling

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

race - fish - kite - cheese

There're many festivals around the world. One of the festivals is the 1) .... festival. Hundreds of people fly different shapes of kites, 2) ...., and monsters. In 3) .... rolling festival, they push the round cheese down the hill and hundreds of people ran after it. The person who wins the 4) ...., wins the cheese. In La Tomatina festival, people throw tomatoes at each other.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We .... (go) to the park yesterday.
2. Ali .... (see) his friend Hani last Friday.
3. I .... (wear) my jacket last night.
4. How did you .... (felt)?
5. I .... (look) up and saw birds.
6. I looked around, everything .... (is) red.
7. My mother gave me a present and .... (wish) me good luck.
8. I closed my eyes and .... (run).
9. Ahmed .... (win) the race two weeks ago.
10. Heba .... (eat) fish for lunch yesterday.

4 Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1. dina enjoyed La Tomatina

....

2. who won the match yesterday

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Kite festival

Guiding words:

(beautiful - world - fly)

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (3) Citizenship

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردّد.


garlic
ثوم


Ful Medames (beans)
فول مدمس


olive oil
زيت الزيتون


syrup
شراب (شربات)


basbousa
بسبوسة


semolina
سميد

Vocabulary المفردات

citizenship	المواطنة	karate	رياضة الكاراتيه	sports	رياضات
age	عمر / سن	Sinai region	منطقة سيناء	ideas	أفكار
culture	ثقافة	wonderful	رائع	energy	طاقة
national	قومي / وطني	Egyptians	المصريون	helpful	متعاون
half	نصف	history	تاريخ	movie	فيلم
festival	مهرجان	sweet	حلو المذاق	land	أرض
nature	طبيعة	east	شرق	prize	جائزة
south	جنوب	rich	غني	mountain	جبل

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
continue	يستمر	continued
describe	يصف	described
participate	يشارك	participated
cook	يطبخ	cooked
serve	يقدم	served

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
win	يفوز	won
mean	يقصد	meant
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought
make	يصنع	made
know	يعرف	knew

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

famous for	مشهور بـ	How about ...?	ماذا عن ...؟
proud of	فخور بـ	full of	مملوء بـ
friendly to	ودود مع	helpful to	متعاون مع
served with	يقدم مع / بـ	under the age of	تحت سن

Definitions تعريفات

special	having something different or that nobody else has	مميز
proud	to feel proud of something	فخور
region	part of a country	منطقة
authors	people who write movies and stories	مؤلفون
hospitable	to be friendly and welcoming to visitors	مضياف/كريم
serve	give food or drink to someone	يقدم (الطعام)
basbousa	a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup	بسبوسة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

انظر و اقرأ.



What makes us special

We often celebrate things in our country's history. A country like Egypt is famous for its history and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. Let's look around us and say why we should be proud of our beautiful country.

غالبًا ما نحتفل بأشياء في تاريخ بلدنا. بلد مثل مصر مشهورة بتاريخها وينبغي أن نستمر في الاحتفال بثقافتها الغنية. دعنا ننظر حولنا، ونقول لماذا يجب علينا أن نفتخر ببلدنا الجميلة.

Here are some ideas:

إليك بعض الأفكار:

The food

الطعام



Our food can be described with one word: wonderful! Maybe the most famous is Ful Medames, beans cooked very slowly, served with lots of olive oil and garlic.

يمكننا وصف طعامنا بكلمة واحدة: رائع! ربما أشهرها الفول المدمس، وهو فول مطبوخ ببطء شديد، يُقدَّم مع الكثير من زيت الزيتون والثوم.



Maybe you want something sweet? How about Basbousa, a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup.

ربما تريد شيئًا حلو المذاق؟ ماذا عن البسبوسة. كعكة السميد الرقيقة الحلوة مع الشربات.

The People

الشعب



More than half of Egyptians are under the age of 30. This means we are full of energy. We are helpful to each other and we are very friendly to visitors. We are very hospitable people.

أكثر من نصف المصريين تحت سن الثلاثين. هذا يعني أننا مليئون بالطاقة. نحن متعاونون مع بعضنا البعض ونحن ودودون للغاية مع الزوار. نحن شعب مضياف جدًا.



Help your child explore what makes our country special.

ساعد طفلك أن يستكشف ما الذي يجعل بلدنا مميزة.

Nature

الطبيعة



Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands. Near the Nile it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in the Sinai region.

يعتقد الكثير من الناس أن مصر ليست سوى صحراء. صحيح أن ٩٠٪ من مصر صحراء، لكن لدينا مساحات خضراء أيضًا. بالقرب من النيل هناك مناطق خضراء وجميلة. توجد جبال في الجنوب والشرق. بل وتتساقط ثلوج في منطقة سيناء.

Culture

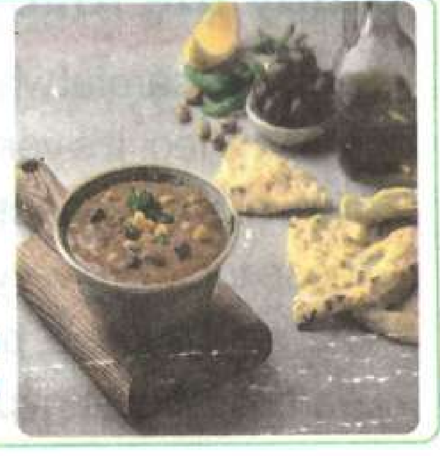
الثقافة



We make a lot of movies and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important prizes. And of course, we love sports! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of one very famous karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.

نصنع الكثير من الأفلام والعديد منها مشهور. لدينا مؤلفون فازوا بجوائز مهمة. وبالطبع نحن نحب الرياضات! كل من يحب لعبة الكاراتيه يعرف اسم لاعبة الكاراتيه المشهورة، فريال عبد العزيز.

Did you know ?



Ful medames is a very old dish. Archaeologists found some ful medames in one of the pyramids. It was thousands of years old!

الفول المدمس أكلة قديمة جدًا. وقد وجد علماء الآثار بعض الفول المدمس في أحد الأهرامات وقد مرّ عليه آلاف السنين!

Help your child explore what makes our country special.

ساعد طفلك أن يستكشف ما الذي يجعل بلدنا مميزة.



Suffix (-ful)

- We can make an adjective by adding (-ful) to the end of a verb or a noun.

يمكننا تكوين الصفة بإضافة المقطع (ful-) إلى نهاية الفعل أو الاسم.

Word الكلمة		Adjective الصفة	
care (v)	يهتم	careful	حريص
pain (n)	ألم	painful	مؤلم
beauty (n)	جمال	beautiful	جميلة
help (v)	يساعد	helpful	متعاون
wonder (v)	يتعجب	wonderful	رائع
use (v)	يستخدم	useful	مفيد
color (n/v)	لون / يلون	colorful	ملون / زاهي الألوان

Note:

The letter "y" in beauty changes into "i" before we add "-ful".

تم تغيير حرف «y» في كلمة «beauty» إلى «i» قبل إضافة اللاحقة «ful-».

Study the following

- I am very careful when I go online.
- I hurt my leg. It's very painful.
- Alia's dress is beautiful. We all love it.
- Those tools are very useful for fixing our door.
- That shirt has red, blue and green stripes. It's very colorful.
- Learning about Egypt is wonderful. It has an amazing history.

Help your child learn and say adjectives that end with (-ful).

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم و يقول صفات تنتهي بـ (ful-).

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We make a lot of ....
   a) movies   b) books   c) plays   d) chairs
2. Our movies are ....
   a) boring   b) famous   c) bad   d) unknown
3. .... won important prizes.
   a) Teachers   b) Doctors   c) Authors   d) Vets
4. Ferial Abdelaziz is a .... player.
   a) tennis   b) football   c) handball   d) karate

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

unkind - energy - friendly - hospitable - Egyptians

Egypt is a famous country. More than half of 1) .... are under the age of 30. This means we are full of 2) .... We are helpful to each other and we are very 3) .... to visitors. We are very 4) .... people.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Egypt is very .... for its history.
   a) bad   b) good   c) famous   d) proud
2. Our food is .... I like it.
   a) helpful   b) bad   c) awful   d) wonderful
3. Egypt is a .... country.
   a) special   b) private   c) tiny   d) small
4. Basbousa is a thin, ... semolina cake with syrup.
   a) salty   b) bad   c) sweet   d) spicy
5. About 90% of Egypt is ....
   a) green land   b) river   c) desert   d) lakes

6. We have authors who won important ....

   a) prizes b) stores c) matches d) stories

7. Alia's dress is ....

   a) beauty b) beautify c) beautiful d) beautifully

8. Learning about Egypt is ....

   a) wander b) wonderful c) wonder d) wonders

9. I hurt my arm. It's very ....

   a) useful b) careful c) beautiful d) painful

10. This picture is very .... It has many colors.

   a) colored b) colors c) colorful d) coloring

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

We often celebrate things in our country's history. A country like Egypt is famous for its history and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. Let's look around us and say why we should be proud of our beautiful country. Our food can be described with one word: wonderful! Maybe the most famous is Ful Medames, beans cooked very slowly, served with lots of olive oil and garlic.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) Egypt is famous for its ....

   a) history b) math c) English d) science

2) The underlined word "famous" means ....

   a) unknown b) well known c) happy d) proud

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Describe our food. ....

4) What's the most famous food in Egypt? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3)

5 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1) region
2) Basbousa
3) special
4) hospitable

a) a thin, sweet semolina cake
b) friendly and welcoming to visitors
c) Alia's dress is beautiful.
d) part of a country
e) having something different

1- ( )　2- ( )　3- ( )　4- ( )

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Aya's dress is .... (beauty).
2. Learning English is .... (wonder).
3. Hend hurt her leg. It's very .... (pain).
4. I read a .... (use) book yesterday.
5. This butterfly is .... (color).
6. My father is .... (help). He helps all people.

7 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

- egypt is famous for its history

....

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

What makes Egypt special

Guiding words:

(history - food - people)

....
....
....
....
....



Lessons (4 & 5) Writing & Project

Vocabulary المفردات

birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد	invitation	دعوة
missing	مفقودة	information	معلومات
guest	ضيف	address	عنوان

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

the whole class	كل الصف (الفصل)	sports day	يوم رياضي
list	قائمة	road	طريق
musical chairs	الكراسي الموسيقية	games	ألعاب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
hope	يتمنى	hoped
prepare	يجهز	prepared
remember	يتذكر	remembered
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
invite	يدعو	invited

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
bring	يُحضر	brought
wear	يرتدي	wore
know	يعرف	knew
eat	يأكل	ate
come	يأتي	came

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

See you then!	أراك لاحقًا!	It'll be fun!	سيكون ذلك ممتعًا!
be ready to...	كُن على استعداد لـ ..	RSVP	برجاء الرد
please come to..	من فضلك تعالى إلى ..	I hope you can come.	أتمنى أن تستطيع المجيء.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Information you need to know in invitations

معلومات تحتاج أن تعرفها في الدعوات

1. The friend's name and address — اسم وعنوان الصديق
2. The date and time of the party — تاريخ ووقت الحفلة
3. The reason for invitation — سبب الدعوة
4. What to bring — ما تجلبه / تحضره
5. What to wear — ما ترتديه
6. How reply to the invitation — كيفية الرد على الدعوة

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Invitation

دعوة

Dear Ali

I'm having a birthday party next Thursday at my house. Can you come? I'm inviting the whole class so all our friends will be there. I want to play some party games so bring some music so we can play musical chairs.

When : Thursday, August 12th
What time : 3 pm - 5 pm
Where : 12 Dene Road(my house!)(next to the library)
What to wear : Something blue
RSVP : 9768324590

I hope you can come.

What is the meaning of RSVP?

The RSVP meaning comes from the first letter of each word of the French phrase (répondez s'il vous plaît) actually means "please reply".

الاختصار RSVP تأتي من أول حرف من كل كلمة من العبارة الفرنسية (répondez s'il vous plaît) بمعنى «برجاء الرد».

Look, read, and write.

انظر، اقرأ واكتب.

Prepare a class celebration

Steps to do your research

1- What are you celebrating?

- Our class' Sports Day.

2- What food and drink do you want?

- Water and healthy food.

3- What games do you want to play?

- Play lots of games, have fun, and eat lots of healthy food.

4- Who is going to prepare the food?

- The students themselves.

5- What do you want guests to wear?

- T-shirt and shorts.

Invite your classmates to your "Class' Sports Day".

Our Class' Sports Day

....

....

....

Where : ....

When : ....

What to wear : ....

Please bring : ....

Be ready to : ....

RSVP : ....

Help your child write an invitation.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب دعوة.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

house - Thursday - address - party - school

Dear friend,

It's my sister's birthday party. We're having a party. The 1) .... will be on 2) ...., 12th August from 3 pm to 5 pm. It will be at my 3) .... The 4) .... is 12 Dene Road next to the library. I hope you can come.

2 Punctuate the following sentences.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1. what are you celebrating, Omar

....

2. I m having a party next friday.

....

3 Write an invitation to your friend, inviting him to:

اكتب دعوة إلى صديقك، تدعوه إلى:

Your brother's birthday party

Guiding words:

(park - 3rd July - eat and drink)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Review on Unit (9)

Party games ألعاب جماعية

musical chairs	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية	pass the parcel	لعبة تمرير الطرد
hide and seek	لعبة الاستغماية	rope pulling	لعبة شد الحبل

Unusual festivals احتفالات غير عادية

Cheese rolling	مهرجان دحرجة الجبن	La Tomatina	مهرجان التراشق بالطماطم
Kite festival	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية	Chinese New Year	رأس السنة الصينية

Egyptian food الطعام المصري

Ful Medames (beans)	فول مدمس	garlic	ثوم	olive oil	زيت الزيتون
basbousa	بسبوسة	syrup	شربات	semolina	سَميد

Others كلمات أخرى

present	هدية	seeker	الباحث
traditional	تقليدي	proud of	فخور بـ
hospitable	مضياف/كريم	special	خاص / مميز
authors	مؤلفون	region	منطقة
wrap	يغلّف	unwrap	يفتح
winner	فائز	invitation	دعوة
player	لاعب	birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد
national	قومي	guest	ضيف
history	تاريخ	address	عنوان

Help your child revise unit (9).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة التاسعة.

Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل، بإضافة d ,ed ,ied للفعل المنتظم.

e.g. I played tennis yesterday.

الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي.

e.g. I went to the club last week.

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
see	يرى	saw
run	يجري	ran
fall	يقع	fell
win	يفوز	won
fly	يطير	flew

Present		Past
give	يعطي	gave
tell	يخبر	told
have / has	يتناول / يملك	had
throw	يلقي / يرمي	threw
wear	يرتدي	wore

Suffix (-ful)

Word		Adjective	
beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل
care	رعاية	careful	حريص
pain	ألم	painful	مؤلم
wonder	يتعجب	wonderful	رائع
color	يلون	colorful	ملون
help	يساعد	helpful	متعاون
use	يستخدم	useful	مفيد

Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

"How to play hide and seek"

The seeker closes his eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide and the seeker tries to find them. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker.

"Why is Egypt special ?"

Egypt is famous for its history and its rich culture. Our food is wonderful. We have some special foods, like ful medames and basbousa. The Egyptians are very friendly and hospitable to visitors. We should be proud of our beautiful country.

"A birthday party"

My friends and I were in the park. We celebrated our friend Ali's birthday. We had a big cake. We played football and flew kites. We were very happy.

"An invitation to a birthday party"

Dear Omar,
I'm having a birthday party next Friday. It will be at my house. Can you come? All my friends will be there. We'll play some party games and have fun.
When: Friday, May 12th
What time? 6 pm - 8 pm
Where: 12 Orabi Street
RSVP: 384621
I hope you can come.

Help your child learn how to write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكتب فقرة.

Dictation on Unit (9)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning
	تقليدي
	يشغل الموسيقى
	يفتح الهدايا
	لعبة تمرير الطرد
	لعبة الاستغماية

Word	Meaning
	يلعب الألعاب
	هدايا
	يلف الهدايا
	الباحث
	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning
	رأس السنة الصينية
	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية
	خيط
	غريب

Word	Meaning
	مهرجان دحرجة الجبن
	مهرجان التراشق بالطماطم
	تقاليد
	تل

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning
	رائع
	السميد
	منطقة سيناء
	كاراتيه
	يقدم
	ثوم
	بسبوسة

Word	Meaning
	فخور
	حلو المذاق
	مضياف/ كريم
	مؤلف
	المواطنة
	مميز
	شربات

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning
	دعوة
	حفلة عيد ميلاد
	عنوان

Word	Meaning
	معلومات
	ضيف
	يوم رياضي

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (9)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. More than half of Egyptians under the age of ....
   a) 10 b) 20 c) 30 d) 40
2. Egyptians are .... to each other.
   a) helpful b) careful c) painful d) colorful
3. Egyptians are very .... to visitors.
   a) bad b) sad c) friendly d) ugly
4. .... are very hospitable people.
   a) French b) Chinese c) Japanese d) Egyptians

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I'm .... of my parents. They are successful.
   a) proud b) afraid c) scared d) bad
2. Basbousa is a very .... dessert.
   a) sweet b) salty c) bad d) cold

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

music - unwraps - present - wraps - person

We all love to give presents. Wrap a small 1) .... and cover it in lots of paper. The players sit in a circle and play some 2) .... Players give the present to the next 3) .... as the music plays. The player who 4) .... the present keeps it.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the text and answer the questiuns. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands. **Near** the Nile it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in the Sinai region.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) It's true that .... of Egypt is desert.

a) 70% b) 90% c) 80% d) 20%

2) The underlined word "near" is opposite to ....

a) beautiful b) small c) big d) far

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Where does it snow in Egypt? ....

4) What do people think of Egypt? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We .... (win) the match yesterday.
2. Hend .... (celebrate) her birthday last month.
3. The Egyptian food is .... (wonder).
4. You should be .... (care) when you cross the road.



Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية

i'm having a birthday party

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Egypt

Guiding words:

(history - proud of - hospitable)

Al- Azhar Corner

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Our food can be described with one word: ....
   a) awful   b) bad   c) wonder   d) wonderful
2. The most famous food is ....
   a) ful medames   b) kofta   c) syrup   d) rice
3. Basbousa is ....
   a) sour   b) salty   c) spicy   d) sweet

2) Read and complete the dialogue with:

house - See - party - When

Reem : Hello, Sara. I'd like to invite you to my birthday 1) ....
Sara : 2) .... is it?
Reem : Next Thursday at 3 pm.
Sara : Where is it ?
Reem : At my 3) .... Remember to wear something blue.
Sara : Ok. 4) .... you then.

3) Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. I .... the present in colorful paper.
   a) wrap   b) hold   c) open   d) play
2. In cheese ...... festival, they push round cheese down the hill.
   a) flying   b) running   c) rolling   d) going
3. Egyptian people are ....
   a) hospitable   b) lazy   c) boring   d) bad
4. Hany .... the race yesterday.
   a) win   b) winning   c) wins   d) won
5. I .... English yesterday.
   a) study   b) studies   c) studying   d) studied

4) Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1) eyes - my - I - closed - ran - and - .
2) went to - yesterday - They - the - park - .
3) famous - for - Egypt - is - history - its - .
4) you - are - What - celebrating - ?
5) beautiful - dress - Alia's - is - .

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Activities on Review (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Last weekend we went to ....
   a) Cairo   b) Aswan   c) Alexandria   d) Damietta
2. Grandma and grandpa live by the ....
   a) mall   b) sea   c) farm   d) stadium
3. The sea was deep and ....
   a) red   b) pink   c) blue   d) black
4. We saw lots of ....
   a) fish   b) birds   c) animals   d) plants

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. There are lots of high .... in the city.
   a) buildings   b) parks   c) rivers   d) lakes
2. I'm very .... I got the highest mark.
   a) sad   b) worried   c) pleased   d) angry

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

colored - weather - spring - parks - summer

My favorite festival is Sham El-Nessim. It is in 1) .... We eat 2) .... eggs. We wear clothes. We go to 3) .... It is so special because the 4) .... is nice.



Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Last year we had a party for the International Children's Book Day. It was fun. We dressed like our favorite book characters. We all brought in food connected to our favorite books.
For example, I made a cake in the shape of a caterpillar. When I was little, my favorite story was "The Very Hungry Caterpillar".
A storyteller came to our classroom and told us lots of stories and poems. The school even gave everyone a free book!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) Last year we had a ....
   a) picnic   b) lesson   c) trip   d) party
2) A storyteller told us lots of ....
   a) notebooks   b) stories   c) books   d) novels

B) Answer the following questions.

3) How was the party? ....
4) What shape of cake did you make? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. My mother .... (tell) me an exciting story last night.
2. Egypt is a .... (wonder) country.
3. There .... (is) a big shopping area in the past.
4. How did Ali .... (went) to school yesterday?

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

what makes Egypt special

....



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Guiding words: **Your favorite festival**

(Eid Al-Fitr - eat kahk - new clothes)

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

English Language Performance Tasks
المهام الأدائية

School : .... Name : ....

★ You want to tell your friend about the Nile.

⇨ **Write about:**

- Where is it?
- How long is it?
- What animals live in it?
- How should we keep it?

⇨ **Draw the Nile and the land around it.**

....
....
....
....

School : .... Name : ....

★ You want to invite your friend to your birthday party.

⇨ **Write about:**

- the date
- the place
- the food
- the number of friends

⇨ **Draw a picture of the party.**

....
....
....
....

Theme (4)
I'm a responsible person

أنا شخص مسؤول





I enjoy my life

أنا أستمتع بحياتي

In this unit students will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about social media.
- give advice with should.
- learn and say words that start with (un-).
- read and listen to a short story.
- write about the pros and cons of computer games.
- research and make a leaflet.

Lesson (1) An Interesting Research

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردّد.



cell phone

هاتف محمول



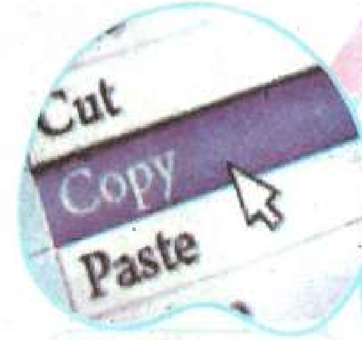
tablet

تابلت



log in / into

يُسجل الدخول إلى



copy

ينسخ





password

كلمة مرور



presentation

عرض تقديمي



chat

يدردش



message

يرسل رسالة / رسالة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

website	موقع إلكتروني	chameleon	حرباء
information	معلومات	the same	نفس الشيء
idea	فكرة	respectful	محترم
own	يملك / خاص	great	عظيم
amazing	مدهش	nice	لطيف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
log in	يسجل دخول	logged in
create	ينشئ	created
message	يرسل رسالة	messaged
remember	يتذكر	remembered
copy	ينسخ	copied
chat	يدردش	chatted
plan	يخطط	planned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
find	يجد	found
write	يكتب	wrote
send	يرسل	sent
get	يحصل على	got
know	يعرف	knew
make	يصنع	made
say	يقول	said

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

log into / in	يسجل الدخول إلى	They're so interesting!	إنهم مثيرون للاهتمام!
Wow!	واوا (للتعجب)	That's interesting!	هذا مثير للاهتمام!
Hooray!	مرحى! (صيحة فرحة)	make a presentation	يقدم عرضًا
What else?	ماذا أيضًا؟	the same color as	نفس اللون مثل
do research	يجرى بحثًا	chat with	يدردش مع
all around	في كل اتجاه	do homework	يقوم بأداء الواجب المنزلي
the same .. as	نفس الشيء.... مثل		

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Mom	What are you doing, Dalia? ماذا تفعلين يا داليا ؟
Dalia	I'm doing my homework about chameleons. They're so interesting! I logged into this library website and I created a password to get information. أنا أقوم بأداء واجبي المنزلي عن الحرابيّ. إنهم مثيرون للاهتمام ! لقد قمت بتسجيل الدخول إلى موقع المكتبة الإلكتروني وقمت بإنشاء كلمة مرور للحصول على المعلومات.
Mom	What does it say? ماذا يقول ؟
Dalia	Chameleons change color. They are the same color as the place where they are. تغير الحرابيُّ لونها. يكون لونها مثل لون المكان الذي تتواجد فيه .
Mom	Wow! That's interesting! What else? واو ! هذا مثير للاهتمام ! ماذا أيضًا ؟
Dalia	They have amazing eyes and they can see all around but I need to do more research. I want to message Yara and chat with her. She knows some great websites. لديهم عيون رائعة ويمكنهم الرؤية في كل اتجاه. لكنني بحاجة إلى إجراء المزيد من البحث. أريد مراسلة يارا والتحدث إليها. إنها تعرف بعض المواقع الإلكترونية الرائعة.
Mom	Are you making a presentation about chameleons? هل ستقدمين عرضًا عن الحرابيّ ؟
Dalia	Yes, I'm making a presentation with Yara. I need to look at lots of websites and find some nice pictures. نعم، سأقدم عرضًا مع يارا. أحتاج إلى إلقاء نظرة على الكثير من المواقع الإلكترونية والعثور على بعض الصور الجميلة.
Mom	Remember to be respectful. Don't copy information. Find ideas and write your own words. تذكري أن تتسمى بالاحترام. لا تنسخي المعلومات. اعثري على الأفكار واكتبي كلماتك الخاصة.

. Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Last week I had some homework about ....
   a) monkeys b) elephants c) chameleons d) tigers
2. I logged into a .... website.
   a) library b) park c) zoo d) school
3. I found .... on the website.
   a) clothes b) information c) money d) shoes
4. Miss Lamia loved our ....
   a) book b) homework c) presentation d) website

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A .... is a small lizard that can change its color.
   a) camel b) chameleon c) monkey d) rat
2. I .... into the library website to get information.
   a) log b) go c) walk d) tag
3. You should create a strong .... for your mobile phone.
   a) word b) words c) password d) crossword
4. I need to do .... about energy.
   a) peach b) research c) sports d) beach
5. I want to .... Yara and chat with her.
   a) message b) sleep c) write d) read
6. I am making a .... about chameleons.
   a) present b) presentation c) picture d) information
7. Don't .... information. Find ideas and write your own words.
   a) read b) copy c) make d) do
8. We had a .... to plan the presentation.
   a) bat b) cat c) chat d) hat

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

information - interesting - password - research - logged

Yesterday, I had some homework about chameleons. They're so 1) .... ! I 2) .... into a library website and created a 3) .... to get 4) ....



4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجِب عن الأسئلة.

Last week I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into a library website and created a password. I found information. I worked with my friend, Yara. I sent her a message about the information. We had a chat to plan the presentation. She did research on her cell phone because she can't use a tablet. Our teacher, Miss Lamia, loved our presentation! Hooray!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) Last week I had some homework about ....
   a) fish   b) camels   c) chameleons   d) fruits.

2) I logged into a .... website.
   a) library   b) park   c) school   d) zoo

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Why did Yara do research on her cell phone?

....

4) Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1. what are you doing, Dalia

....

2. I m making presentation with yara.

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

An interesting research

Guiding words:

(do research- log in- password)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2) Staying Safe Online

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردّد.



bully

يتنمر



have fun

يمرح / يستمتع بوقته



contact

يتصل



friends

أصدقاء





share ideas

يتشارك الأفكار



keep my password secret

أحافظ على سرية كلمة المرور

personal information

معلومات شخصية



tag

يشير إلى شخص في صورة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

safe websites	مواقع إنترنت آمنة	online	على الإنترنت
photo	صورة	creative	مبدع / مبتكر
information	معلومات	scary	مخيف
ugly	قبيح	strong	قوي
adult	شخص بالغ / راشد	stupid	غبي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
contact	يتصل	contacted
share	يتشارك	shared
tag	يشير إلى	tagged
bully	يتنمر	bullied
check	يفحص / يراجع	checked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
find	يجد	found
think	يعتقد	thought
say	يقول	said
keep	يحافظ	kept
take	يأخذ	took

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

turn off	يطفئ	pros and cons	مميزات وعيوب
at night	ليلًا	accept to	يوافق أن
make friends	يكوّن صداقات	check with	يتحقق مع
only friends	الأصدقاء فقط	have a problem with	لديه مشكلة في
That's horrible!	هذا فظيع!	That's really cool!	هذا رائع حقًا!

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



'Social media' is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts, and information and have fun.

"وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي" هي عندما نستخدم أجهزة الكمبيوتر والأجهزة الأخرى لمشاركة الأفكار و الخواطر والمعلومات والاستمتاع بوقتنا.



Pros and cons of social media



Pros مميزات



You can have fun.

يمكنك أن تستمتع بوقتك/ تمرح.



You can learn interesting things.

يمكنك تعلم أشياء شيقة.



You can share photos.

يمكنك مشاركة الصور.



You can play games.

يمكنك لعب الألعاب.

You can be creative.

يمكنك أن تكون مبتكرًا.



You can find information for your homework.

يمكنك العثور على معلومات لواجبك المنزلي.

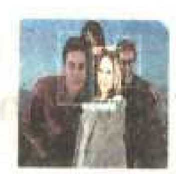


You can talk to friends and family.

يمكنك التحدث مع الأصدقاء والعائلة.



Cons عيوب



People can tag you in photos when you don't want them to.

يمكن للأشخاص الإشارة لك في صور وأنت لا ترغب أن يفعلوا ذلك.



People you don't know can contact you.

يمكن لأشخاص لا تعرفهم الاتصال بك.



People can take your personal information.

يمكن للأشخاص الحصول على معلوماتك الشخصية.



Some people can bully you.

يمكن أن تتعرض للتنمر من بعض الأشخاص.

Staying safe online

البقاء آمنًا عبر الإنترنت





Do (✓)

You should accept to be friends only with people you know.

يجب أن تقبل أن تكون صديقًا فقط للأشخاص الذين تعرفهم.

You should keep your password secret.

يجب عليك الحفاظ على سرية كلمة المرور الخاصة بك.

You should keep your personal information secret.

يجب عليك الحفاظ على سرية معلوماتك الشخصية.





Don't (×)

You shouldn't give your password to anyone who asks.

يجب ألا تعطي كلمة المرور الخاصة بك لأي شخص يطلبها.

You shouldn't tell everyone your birthday and your phone number.

يجب ألا تخبر الجميع بعيد ميلادك ورقم هاتفك.

You shouldn't make new friends online.

يجب ألا تكوّن صداقات جديدة عبر الإنترنت.

Help your child read about the pros and cons of social media.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مميزات وعيوب وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Online bullying

Magdy	Wael, you know I started at the new school? وائل هل تعرف أنني بدأت في المدرسة الجديدة؟
Wael	Yes. Is it nice? نعم. هل هي جميلة؟
Magdy	Yes, but I had a problem with online bullying. There was a boy in my class, Sherif, who was sending me messages. نعم، ولكن لدي مشكلة مع التنمر الإلكتروني. كان هناك ولد في فصلي، شريف، كان يرسل لي رسائل.
Wael	What did he say? ماذا قال؟
Magdy	He said I was stupid and no one liked me. قال إنني غبي ولا يحبني أحد.
Wael	That's horrible! Did you tell anyone? هذا شيء فظيع! هل أخبرت أحدًا؟
Magdy	Yes, my dad. He went to the school and talked to my teacher. He showed my teacher the messages from Sherif. نعم، أبي. ذهب إلى المدرسة وتحدث مع معلمتي وعرض على معلمتي بعض الصور من شريف.
Wael	What did your teacher do? ماذا فعلت معلمتك؟
Magdy	She spoke to Sherif and Sherif's parents. They all stopped the bullying. They said I shouldn't talk to Sherif online. تحدثت مع شريف ووالديه. توقفوا جميعًا عن التنمر. وقالوا إنني يجب ألا أتكلم مع شريف عبر الإنترنت.
Wael	And Sherif? وشريف؟
Magdy	He said sorry to me. But I feel much happier now! I know what I should do about online bullying now - keep the messages and tell an adult quickly. اعتذر لي. ولكنني أشعر بسعادة أكثر الآن! أنا أعرف ما يجب على فعله بشأن التنمر الإلكتروني الآن - أحتفظ بالرسائل وأخبر شخصًا بالغًا سريعًا.
Wael	That's really cool! When are you coming to see me? هذا رائع حقًا! متى ستأتي لزيارتي؟

Help your child learn what to do about online bullying.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ماذا يفعل بشأن التنمر الإلكتروني.



Language

Giving advice: تقديم النصيحة:

Subject (فاعل) + should (ينبغي أن) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

We use "should" to talk about things that are good for us to do. نستخدم (should) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي من المفيد لنا القيام بها.

- I should only give my phone number to my friends.
- I should turn my phone off at night.

Subject (فاعل) + shouldn't (لا ينبغي أن) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

We use "shouldn't" to talk about things that are bad for us to do. نستخدم (shouldn't) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي من غير المفيد لنا القيام بها.

- I shouldn't use my phone late at night.
- You shouldn't make new friends online with people you don't know.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. You .... accept to be friends only with people you know.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) can't
2. You .... keep your password secret.
   a) can't b) shouldn't c) should d) aren't
3. You .... give your password to anyone who asks.
   a) shouldn't b) need to c) must d) should
4. You .... tell everyone your birthday and your phone number.
   a) want b) shouldn't c) must d) should
5. You should .... your personal information secret.
   a) keep b) keeps c) kept d) keeping

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I .... (should) give my phone number to everyone.
2. He shouldn't .... (rides) his bike here.
3. You .... (shouldn't) see the doctor when you are ill.
4. We should .... (eating) healthy food.

Help your child give advice with should.

ساعد طفلك أن يقدم النصيحة باستخدام «should».

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Magdy started a new ....
   a) zoo b) school c) park d) class
2. Magdy had a problem with online ....
   a) shopping b) playing c) bullying d) studying
3. Sherif said that Magdy was ....
   a) stupid b) smart c) fast d) nice
4. Now Magdy is ....
   a) stupid b) bad c) sad d) happy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. You .... tell your parents when someone bullies you online.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) mustn't
2. I .... keep my password secret.
   a) can't b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't
3. I .... give my password to anyone.
   a) should b) must c) can d) shouldn't
4. Facebook is the most famous social .... website.
   a) life b) media c) device d) equipment
5. People can .... ideas on social media.
   a) go b) share c) chat d) stay

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

teacher - websites - should - adult - contact

To be safe online, you 1) .... use strong password. You should 2) .... only friends. You should use safe 3) .... If you have any problem, you should check with an 4) ....



4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجِب عن الأسئلة

"Social media" is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts and information and have fun. Social media have some pros. You can have fun. You can share photos. You can talk to your friends and your family. You can find information for your homework. You can be creative. You can play games. But they have some cons, too. People you don't know can contact you. People can take your personal information. Some people can bully you.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) You can share .... on social media.
   a) phones b) photos c) books d) paper
2) Some people can .... you on social media.
   a) play b) bully c) pull d) learn

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Who can you talk to on social media? ....
4) How can social media help you do your homework? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. You should .... (keeps) your password secret.
2. You .... (should) smoke in the hospital.
3. You shouldn't .... (is) late for school.
4. You should .... (studies) hard.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

you can play games

....



7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Pros and cons of social media

Guiding words:

(fun - information - tag - bully)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) Reading

Vocabulary المفردات

neighbors	جيران	problem	مشكلة
restaurant	مطعم	one hour	ساعة واحدة
unhealthy	غير صحّي	apartment	شقة سكنية
matter	مسألة / أمر	together	سويًا / معًا
the same	نفس الشيء	outside	بالخارج
computer games	ألعاب كمبيوتر	the same	نفس الشئ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
stop	يتوقف عن	stopped
agree	يوافق	agreed
thank	يشكر	thanked
decide	يقرر	decided
ask	يسأل	asked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met
know	يعرف	knew
give	يعطي	gave
leave	يُغادر	left
understand	يفهم	understood

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the restaurant	في المطعم	play with	يلعب (مع - بـ)
What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟	have fun	يمرح / يستمتع بوقته
go outside	يخرج	play together	يلعبون سويًا
decide to	يقرر أن	at the end of	في نهاية
do homework	يقوم بأداء الواجب المنزلي	That's a lovely idea.	هذه فكرة رائعة.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read the story and answer.

اقرأ القصة وأجب.

How two neighbors helped each other?

كيف ساعد اثنان من الجيران بعضهما البعض؟



Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant. Rania was sad.

التقت هدير بجارتها رانيا في المطعم. كانت رانيا حزينة.

Hadeer asked, "What's the matter, my friend?" Rania answered, "It's my children, Nancy and Nader. They love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside. I don't know what to do".

سألت هدير: "ما الأمر، يا صديقتي؟ أجابت رانيا: " إنهم أطفالي،نانسي ونادر. إنهما يحبان لعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر. ولا يؤديان واجبهما المدرسي. ولا يخرجان. لا أعرف ماذا أفعل."

Hadeer said, "Yes, it is a problem. Tarek, my son, is the same. He often plays computer games. That's really unhealthy. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should do other things. They should play with their friends. They should go to the park".

" قالت هدير " نعم إنها مشكلة. طارق ابني نفس الشيء. غالبًا ما يلعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر و هذا غير صحي فعلًا. و يجب أن يتوقف الأطفال عن اللعب بعد ساعة واحدة. يجب عليهم فعل أشياء أخرى. يجب أن يلعبوا مع أصدقائهم. يجب أن يذهبوا إلى الحديقة."

Rania said, "Yes, I agree." Hadeer said, 'Let's find games where they can play with friends. Tarek would love to play more with Nader. Can Nader come to our apartment? They can play together and have fun." Rania said, "That's a lovely idea. And they can go to the park together. Thank you, Hadeer!"

قالت رانيا: " نعم، أوافقك الرأي" قالت هدير: " لنجد ألعابًا حيث يمكنهم اللعب مع الأصدقاء. سيحب طارق أن يلعب أكثر مع نادر. هل يمكن أن يأتي نادر إلى شقتنا؟ يمكنهما اللعب معًا و الاستمتاع. قالت رانيا: " هذه فكرة رائعة. ويمكنهما الذهاب إلى الحديقة معًا. شكرًا لك يا هدير!"

Help your child read a story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة.

Lesson (3)

1) Why was Rania unhappy?

....

2) Where did Hadeer and Rania meet?

....

3) What advice did Hadeer give her friend?

....

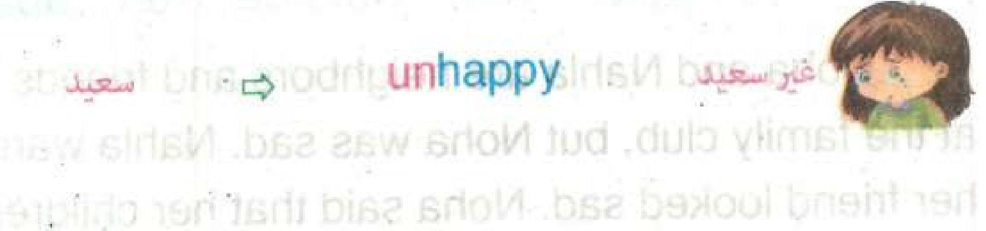


Tip!

un- = not

You can add un- at the beginning of a word to get the opposite meaning. يمكنك إضافة -un في بداية الكلمة للحصول على عكس المعنى.

 healthy صحي ⇨ unhealthy غير صحي 

 happy سعيد ⇨ unhappy غير سعيد 

 kind عطوف ⇨ unkind غير عطوف 

Give the opposite of the words using the prefix "un-".

1) usual ⟶ ....   2) tidy ⟶ ....

3) kind ⟶ ....   4) like ⟶ ....

5) clear ⟶ ....   6) finished ⟶ ....

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Hadeer met her neighbour, Rania, at the ....

   a) café b) restaurant c) park d) school

2. Rania was ....

   a) sad b) happy c) angry d) smart

3. Rania's .... love playing computer games.

   a) parents b) neighbors c) friends d) children

4. They don't do their ....

   a) food b) exercises c) homework d) rooms

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

computer - met - outside - fun - apartment

Noha and Nahla are neighbors and friends. They 1) .... at the family club, but Noha was sad. Nahla wanted to know why her friend looked sad. Noha said that her children Habiba and Sama love playing 2) .... games, which is really unhealthy. They don't have time to do their homework or go 3) ....

Nahla suggested inviting Noha's children to her 4) .... where they can play with her children and have fun.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. They love .... computer games.

   a) cooking b) playing c) eating d) drinking

2. They don't .... their homework.

   a) make b) did c) do d) play

3. Playing computer games for a long time is ....

   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) kind

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4. Children can play together and .... fun.

a) play b) sleep c) read d) have

5. .... is the matter?

a) Why b) Where c) What d) How

6. Smoking is very .... It's bad for you.

a) unhealthy b) healthy c) kind d) good

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant. Rania was sad. Her children Nancy and Nader love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside. She doesn't know what to do. Tarek, Hadeer's son, is the same problem. That's really unhealthy. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should play with their friends. They should go to the park.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) Rania is Hadeer's ....

a) neighbor b) child c) sister d) grandma

2) Rania's children love ....

a) playing football b) playing tennis
c) playing computer games d) playing basketball

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Where did Hadeer and Rania meet? ....

4) When should children stop playing computer games?

....

5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

where did Hadeer and Rania meet

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (4 & 5) Writing & Projects

Vocabulary المفردات

pros	مزايا	parents	الوالدين
cons	عيوب	screen	شاشة
reason	سبب/مبرر	team	فريق
prize	جائزة	leaflet	نشرة - كتيب
opinion	رأي	headings	العناوين الرئيسية
too much	كثير جدًا	together	معًا / سويًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
need	يحتاج	needed
solve	يحل	solved
believe	يعتقد	believed
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
watch	يشاهد	watched

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
say	يقول	said
give	يعطي	gave
spend	يقضي	spent
make	يصنع	made
find	يجد	found

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

good for	مفيد لـ	find a prize	يجد جائزة
bad for	ضار لـ	search for	يبحث عن
spend hours on	يقضي ساعات على	in my opinion	في رأيي
solve problems	يحل مشكلات	give advice about	يقدم النصح بشأن
at the end	في النهاية	make friends	يكوّن صداقات
on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى	find out	يكتشف

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Pros and cons of computer games

Paragraph 1

Bad things about computer games

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy for their children.

Paragraph 2

Good things about computer games

But, on the other hand, there are some reasons why computer games are good for children. In some games, children need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

Paragraph 3

My opinion

I really like computer games where I go outside. I go with my uncle and my friends. We like these games because you find a prize at the end. In my opinion, we can enjoy games, but we need to have other things in our lives like sports and time with our family.

Pros	Cons
Children need to solve problems.	They spend many hours on computers.
They can have prizes.	They don't go outside or do homework.
They make friends.	It is not healthy for children.
They play with their family.	They make them lazy.

Help your child write about the pros and cons of computer games.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن مميزات وعيوب ألعاب الكمبيوتر.

How to write a pros and cons essay

كيف تكتب مقالًا عن مميزات وعيوب شيئ ما

1- Begin your essay by introducing your topic.

١- ابدأ المقالة بمقدمة عن الموضوع الخاص بك.

2- The main body usually consists of two paragraphs: The first paragraph presents the pros of the issue and the second paragraph presents the cons of the issue.

٢- يتكون الموضوع الرئيسي عادة من فقرتين: تقدم أول فقرة إيجابيات القضية وتعرض الأخرى سلبيات القضية.

3- In the final paragraph, give your opinion.

٣- في الفقرة الأخيرة، أعرض رأيك.



عند كتابة مميزات وعيوب شيء ما، ينبغي أن تستخدم العبارات التالية:

1- Many people think that ....
They also believe that ....

١- يعتقد كثير من الناس أن ......
كما يعتقدون أيضًا أن .....

2- On the other hand, some people think that ......(To show contrast)

٢- ومن ناحية أخرى، يعتقد البعض أن .... (لتوضيح التناقض)

3- In my opinion, ... (To give an opinion)

٣- وفي رأيي ..... (لإبداء الرأي)

Watching too much TV

Paragraph 1

Many people think that watching too much TV is bad for children as they spend too many hours watching it. They also believe that it is a waste of time.

Paragraph 2

On the other hand, some people think that watching TV is good for children. They can watch educational programs and football matches. They also think that it is useful. Children can watch religious programs.

Paragraph 3

In my opinion, we can enjoy watching TV, but we should watch useful programs.

Help your child write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية.

Project

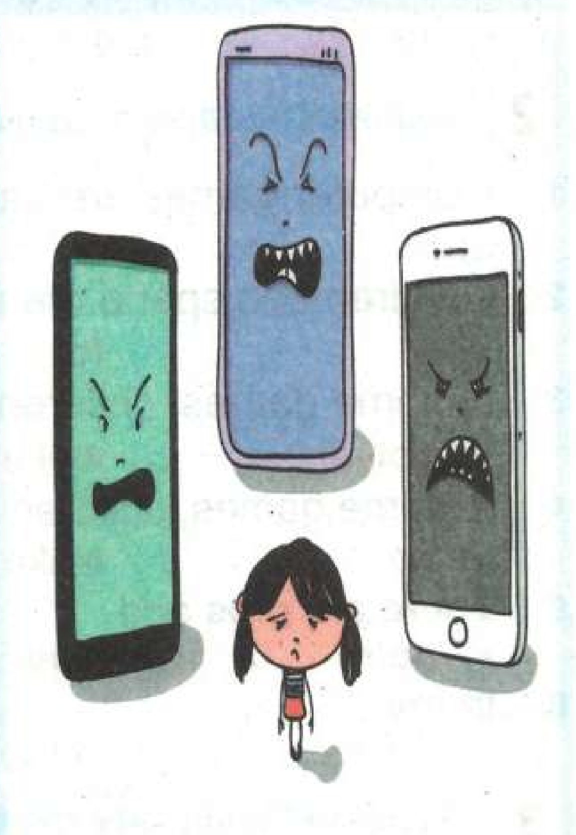
Look and read the leaflet.

STOP ONLINE BULLYING NOW

Research بحث

- Find out about bullying online
- Look for help online

- تعرف على التنمر عبر الإنترنت.
- ابحث عن المساعدة عن الإنترنت.



What to do ماذا تفعل

- Tell people about bullying online
- Give advice about bullying

- أخبر الأشخاص عن التنمر عبر الإنترنت.
- قدم نصائح عن التنمر.

What to do more ماذا تفعل أكثر

- Make posters or leaflets and put them around the school
- Talk to teachers and parents

- صمم ملصقات أو منشورات وضعها في أنحاء المدرسة.
- تحدث إلى المعلمين وأولياء الأمور.

Help your child research and make a leaflet.

ساعد طفلك أن يبحث ويقوم بعمل نشرة.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Many people say that computer games are .... for children.
   a) bad b) good c) useful d) nice
2. Children can spend .... hours on their computers.
   a) few b) many c) small d) big
3. Children don't go .... while playing games.
   a) inside b) indoor c) outside d) into
4. Parents say that playing computer games isn't ....
   a) healthy b) good c) well d) unhealthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Computer games are bad .... children.
   a) in b) at c) by d) for
2. Children can spend many hours .... their computers.
   a) in b) for c) on d) at
3. In some games, children need to .... problems.
   a) solve b) make c) drink d) play
4. In some games, children .... friends and play with their family.
   a) do b) make c) play d) eat
5. There are pros and .... of computer games.
   a) point b) cons c) coins d) cans
6. In my ...., computers are good for children.
   a) think b) believe c) idea d) opinion

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

spend - healthy - screen - bad - homework

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can 1) .... many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the 2) .... and they don't go outside, or do their 3) .... Parents say this is not 4) .... for their children.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Computers are very important. We need them everywhere. They are necessary for everyone. Computers have many pros and cons. They are bad for children because they spend many hours playing games. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents think this is not healthy for their children. On the other hand, computers are also good for them. In some games they need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) Computers have many .... and cons.
   a) pears b) pros c) bears d) prices

2) The underlined word "healthy" is opposite of ....
   a) good b) unhealthy c) kind d) nice

B) Answer the following questions.

3) What do children need in some games?

....

4) Do children go outside while playing games?

....

5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

children can spend many hours playing games

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Pros and cons of social media

Guiding words:

(good - research - homework)

....

....

Review on Unit (10)

Social Media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

cell phone	هاتف محمول	tablet	تابلت
password	كلمة مرور	message	رسالة / يرسل رسالة
copy	ينسخ	chat	يدردش
presentation	عرض	chameleon	حرباء
log in / into	يسجل دخول	bully	يتنمر / التنمر
contact	يتصل	have fun	يمرح
online	على الانترنت	opinion	رأي
tag	يشير إلى / إشارة	neighbours	جيران
unhealthy	غير صحي	unhappy	غير سعيد
pros	مزايا	good for	مفيد لـ
cons	عيوب	bad for	ضار لـ

(✓) Pros of social media

- You can have fun.
- You can find information for your research / homework.
- You can learn interesting things.

(×) Cons of social media

- Some people can bully you.
- People you don't know can contact you.
- People can take your personal information.

Language Giving advice:

Subject (الفاعل) **+ should** (ينبغي أن) **+ inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

نستخدم (should) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي من المفيد لنا القيام بها.

- I should only give my phone number to my friends.

Subject (الفاعل) **+ shouldn't** (لا ينبغي أن) **+ inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

نستخدم (shouldn't) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي من غير المفيد لنا القيام بها.

- We shouldn't sleep late.

Help your child revise unit (10).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة العاشرة.

Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

"Social media"

Social media is when we use our computers to share ideas. You can have fun. You can play games. On the other hand, some people can bully you. People can tag you in photos.

"Pros and cons of social media"

Many people think that social media is useful. We can post messages. We can search for information very easily. On the other hand, some people think that social media is bad. Children waste their time. They spend many hours playing computer games.

"An interesting research"

Last week, I did an interesting research about the panda. I logged into the library website to get information. I messaged Yara because she knows some great websites. Our teacher liked our research.

"Online bullying"

Online bullying is to say unkind words about someone on social media. We should give advice about bullying. We should make posters or leaflets and put them around the school to stop this bad habit.

Help your child learn how to write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكتب فقرة.

Dictation on Unit (10)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	كلمة مرور	....	الحرباء
....	يجرى بحثًا	....	رسالة
....	يسجل دخول	....	يدردش
....	محترم	....	ينسخ
....	عرض	....	تابلت

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	يتصل	....	يشارك الأفكار
....	يشير إلى شخص في صورة	....	غبي
....	يتنمر	....	مميزات وعيوب
....	معلومات	....	أصدقاء
....	مُبدع	....	مخيف

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	مشكلة	....	جيران
....	مسألة / أمر	....	غير صحي
....	يقابل	....	يقرر
....	يلعب مع	....	يمرح
....	شقة سكنية	....	معًا

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	شاشة	....	يقضي ساعات على
....	في رأيي	....	يحل مشكلات
....	نشرة - كتيب	....	يكتشف
....	الوالدين	....	فريق
....	العناوين الرئيسية	....	جائزة

Help your child write the words.

ساعد طفلك على كتابة الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (10)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Last week I had some homework about ....
   a) spiders b) fish c) chameleons d) birds
2. I .... into a library website.
   a) logged b) played c) created d) studied
3. I worked .... my friend, Yara.
   a) at b) with c) to d) in
4. Miss Lamia .... our presentation.
   a) hated b) thanked c) threw d) loved

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I use the .... to make calls.
   a) computer b) radio c) TV d) phone
3. I created a ....to get information.
   a) password b) card c) website d) phone

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

into - password - logged - interesting - chameleons

I'm Ramy. I'm doing my homework about 1) .... They are so 2) .... I logged 3) .... a library website and I created a 4) .... to get information.



Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Omar. I'm in primary four. I'm ten years old. I go to school every day. I get up at six o'clock. My school is near my home, so I go on foot. My school is big and clean. My teachers are kind and helpful. I love my school very much.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) Omar is in primary ....
   a) five b) four c) three d) six
2) The underlined word "near" is opposite of ....
   a) far b) long c) short d) fast

B) Answer the following questions.

3) When does Omar get up? ....
4) How are the teachers at Omar's school? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We .... (should) talk to people we don't know online.
2. Esraa should .... (studies) hard.
3. You .... (shouldn't) stay safe online.
4. Eman should .... (helped) her friends.



Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

i worked with my friend, Yara

....



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Research about chameleons

Guiding words:

(interesting - amazing eyes - see)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al- Azhar Corner

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Last week I had some homework about ....
   a) chameleons b) lizards c) rats d) cats
2. I logged into a library ....
   a) book b) website c) story d) novel
3. I created a .... password to get information.
   a) weak b) tall c) long d) strong

2) Read and complete the dialogue with:

help - should - unhappy - bullied

Ahmed : Why are you 1) .... ?

Mariam : Someone 2) .... me on social media.

Ahmed : You 3) .... tell your parents.

Mariam : I told them and they will 4) .... me.

3) Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Aya is a .... girl. She always has amazing ideas.
   a) stupid b) creative c) lazy d) thirsty
2. We use .... and cell phones to go online.
   a) tablets b) fans c) rockets d) bikes
3. .... have amazing eyes and they can change color.
   a) Lions b) Monkeys c) Zebras d) Chameleons
4. You should .... safe online.
   a) stays b) staying c) stayed d) stay
5. You shouldn't .... anyone your password.
   a) tell b) tells c) told d) telling

4) Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1) should - to - You - go - early - bed - .
2) did - do - What - Ali - get - information - to - ?
3) about - doing - I'm - research - chameleons - .
4) respectful - We - be - should - .
5) run - in - You - shouldn't - classroom - the - .

March Test اختبار شهر مارس

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Egypt is a great ....
   a) country b) country c) city d) village
2. Egypt is famous for its ....
   a) English b) history c) petrol d) plant
3. More than half of Egyptians are .... the age of 30.
   a) on b) up c) under d) of
4. Egyptians are .... of energy.
   a) out b) empty c) inside d) full

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. In hide and seek game, the seeker tries to .... the other players.
   a) find b) hide c) join d) wrap
2. Some computer games need ...., so children can make friends.
   a) apartments b) screens c) teams d) animals

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

research - devices - homework - world - have

Social media has an important role in our life. Social media helps all people around the 1) .... People can use computers and other 2) .... to share their thoughts and ideas. Children can use social media to do their 3) .... Scientists can use social media to do 4) ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the text and answer the questions. إقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Yesterday, we had a picnic in the park. We went to celebrate our friend Nader's birthday. We played hide and seek game. Nader was the seeker and we were the players. He closed his eyes and counted to ten. We hid and Nader tried to find us. Nader found Mona and she became the next seeker. Ali was the winner because he was the last one left. We enjoyed the picnic so much.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) We had a picnic ....
   a) yesterday b) last week c) Monday d) tomorrow
2) The underlined word "winner" is the opposite of ....
   a) poor b) rich c) player d) loser

B) Answer the following questions.

3) What did they celebrate at the park?..
4) Summarize the text in one sentence...

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. You should .... (helps) your mum.
2. You .... (should) play in the street.
3. My father is .... (help).
4. I .... (go) to the club yesterday,



Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية

we travel on water by ship

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Computer games

Guiding words:

(spend - children - time)



What can we do?

ماذا نستطيع أن نفعل؟

In this unit students will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about transportation.
- practice making sentences with need and must.
- learn about different transportation.
- read and listen to a short story.
- learn about and say words that begin with tr and cr, and diphthongs ai, oa, and ea.
- write about how to stop air pollution.
- research and make a leaflet about road safety.

Lesson (1) Transportation

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد.

metro
مترو

ship
سفينة

bus
أوتوبيس/ حافلة

Transportation
وسائل المواصلات

plane
طائرة

boat
مركب/ قارب

taxi
سيارة أجرة (تاكسي)

train
قطار

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

vehicle	مَرْكَبة	air	هواء - جو
around	حول	city	مدينة (كبيرة)
road	طريق	under	تحت / أسفل
airport	مطار	train station	محطة قطار

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
move	يتحرك/ يسير	moved
travel	يسافر	traveled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
ride	يركب	rode
come	يأتي	came

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

go through	يذهب عبر	around the city	حول المدينة
get to school	يصل إلى المدرسة	catch a bus	يلحق / يركب الحافلة
class quiz	اختبار صفي	far from	بعيد عن
Have a nice day!	أتمنى لك يومًا جميلًا!	cool!	رائع!
on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام	on water	على الماء
on a rail	على سكة حديد	on the road	على الطريق

Did you know ?

The Ghan in Australia is the longest passenger train in the world. It is about 774 meters long. The train has up to 44 passenger carriages.

يعد قطار الغان في أستراليا أطول قطار ركاب في العالم، يبلغ طوله حوالي ٧٧٤ مترًا. يمكن أن يصل إلى ٤٤ عربة ركاب.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Seleem	: Hi Maged! I'm doing a class quiz about public transportation. مرحبًا يا ماجد! أنا أقوم بعمل اختبار صفي عن المواصلات العامة.
Maged	: Cool! رائع!
Seleem	: How do you get to school? كيف تصل إلى المدرسة؟
Maged	: I come to school on foot. أنا آتي إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام.
Seleem	: Do you ever catch the bus or metro? هل سبق لك الركوب الحافلة أو المترو؟
Maged	: Only if I'm late. I like to come on foot so I can meet my friends. فقط إذا كنت متأخرًا. أنا أحب المجيء سيرًا على الأقدام حتى أستطيع مقابلة أصدقائي.
Seleem	: Thanks! Ramy, how do you get to school? شكرًا لك! كيف تصل إلى المدرسة يا رامي؟
Ramy	: I come by car with my dad. أنا آتي بالسيارة مع أبي.
Seleem	: Do you ever catch the bus or metro? هل سبق لك الركوب الحافلة أو المترو؟
Ramy	: Yes, if my dad is not in town, I take the bus. I like it. نعم، إذا كان والدي ليس في المدينة ؛ فأنا أركب الحافلة. أنا أحبها.
Seleem	: Why? لماذا؟
Ramy	: We travel slowly and I can see the city. نحن نتنقل ببطء؛ ويمكنني رؤية المدينة.
Seleem	: Do you ever come to school on foot? هل سبق لك أن أتيت إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام؟
Ramy	: No, my house is very far from the school. لا، إن منزلي بعيد جدًا عن المدرسة.
Seleem	: Thanks! Have a nice day! شكرًا لك! أتمنى لك يومًا جميلًا!
Ramy	: You too! ولك أيضًا!

Help your child listen and read a dialog about ways of getting to school. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع و يقرأ حوارًا عن طرق الوصول للمدرسة.



Means of Transport Prepositions

حروف الجر الخاصة بوسائل المواصلات

by

تأتي (by) قبل جميع وسائل المواصلات بشرط أن لا يأتي أداة نكرة أو معرفة أو صفات ملكية بينها وبين وسيلة المواصلات.

by car — by bus — by taxi — by ship

in

تأتي (in) مع كلمتي (taxi / car) بشرط وجود أداة نكرة أو معرفة أو صفات ملكية بين (in) و وسيلة المواصلات.

in a car — in a taxi — in my car — in the taxi

on

تأتي (on) مع كل باقي وسائل المواصلات بشرط وجود أداة نكرة أو معرفة أو صفات ملكية بين (on) و وسيلة المواصلات.

on a bus — on a ship — on the plane

Remember

- on foot - on rail - on water - on road

Examples:

- When I travel by plane, I go through the air.
- When I travel by ship and boat, I am on the water.
- When I travel by bus and car, I am on the road.
- When I travel to Luxor from Cairo by train, I move on a rail under the vehicle.
- We go to the airport to travel by plane.
- A train moves on a rail and we ride from a train station.
- I travel by bus around the city.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. When I travel by .... , I go through the air.
   a) plane b) bus c) train d) car
2. When I travel by ship, I'm on the ....
   a) road b) rail c) water d) air
3. When I .... by bus, I'm on the road.
   a) play b) sing c) travel d) run
4. I travel to Luxor from Cairo .... train.
   a) at b) on c) in d) by

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We travel .... plane through the air.
   a) in b) on c) by d) at
2. A .... moves on a rail.
   a) ship b) train c) plane d) bus
3. We travel on .... by ship or boat.
   a) air b) rails c) roads d) water
4. I go to school .... foot.
   a) in b) at c) on d) by
5. Cars and buses are means of ....
   a) sports b) transportation c) pollution d) colors
6. I go to the zoo .... the bus
   a) by b) on c) in d) at
7. I like to go to school .... bike.
   a) by b) on c) in d) of
8. Who comes to school .... the car?
   a) on b) by c) in d) at

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

transportation - by - bus - travel - in

I'm Malak. I'm nine years old. I go to school by 1) .... It's my favorite 2) .... Sometimes I go with my father 3) .... car. My family and I 4) .... by train on holidays.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Yesterday my family and I went to Aswan to visit our uncle. We went by train. We rode a train from a train station. We moved a rail under the vehicle. My favorite transportation is a train. I loved traveling by train. It's clean and fast. My brother likes going through the air more. He likes traveling by plane. My father's favorite is the bus.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) Yesterday, we went to ....

a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) Giza d) Aswan

2) We went by ....

a) bus b) train c) plane d) car

B) Answer the following questions.

3) What is your favorite transportation? ....

4) When did you go to visit your uncle? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We travel .... (in) taxi around the city.
2. I go to school .... (by) foot.
3. I go to my office .... (on) the car.
4. They go to school .... (on) bus.



6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

who likes traveling by bus

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Transportation

Guiding words: (plane - air - rail)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2 / A) Road Safety

Vocabulary المفردات

sign	لافتة	road safety	السلامة على الطريق
important	هام / مهم	helmet	خوذة
seat belt	حزام أمان	necessary	ضروري
safely	بأمان	safe	آمن
right	يمين	green light	الضوء الأخضر / إشارة خضراء
left	يسار	danger	خطر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
need	يحتاج	needed	wait	ينتظر	waited
cross	يعبر	crossed	ride	يركب	rode
turn	يتجه / ينعطف	turned	swim	يسبح	swam
park	يركن سيارة	parked	show	يبين - يظهر	showed

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

go straight	يسير للأمام مباشرة	in danger	في خطر
turn right	اتجه يمينًا	in the middle of	في منتصف
stop here	توقف هنا	divide into	يُقسّم إلى
wait for	ينتظر	safe roads	طرق آمنة
ride a bike	يركب دراجة	cross the road	يعبر الطريق

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Road safety

السلامة على الطريق



You need a green light to cross the road.

تحتاج إلى إشارةٍ خضراء كي تعبر الطريق.



You need to look left and right.

تحتاج أن تنظر يسارًا و يمينًا.



You need a helmet on your bike.

تحتاج إلى خوذة وأنت تركب الدراجة.



You need a seat belt in your car.

تحتاج إلى حزام أمان في سيارتك.

Road signs

لافتات الطريق



You can go straight and turn right.

يمكنك السير للأمام مباشرةً والاتجاه يمينًا.



Stop here and wait for a green light.

توقف هنا وانتظر إشارة المرور الخضراء.



You can't swim here.

لا يمكنك السباحة هنا.

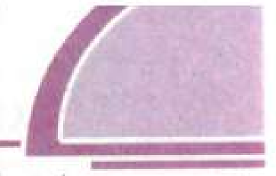


There are sometimes camels on the road.

يوجد أحيانًا جمال على الطريق.

Help your child learn about road safety.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن السلامة على الطريق.



a Language

need

Usage We use " need" when something is important or necessary. نستخدم الفعل (need) لنبين أهمية أو ضرورة عمل شيء ما.

Subject (فاعل) + need + noun (الاسم)

- You need a helmet on your bike.
- You need safe roads.

Subject (فاعل) + need to + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. You need to look left and right.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. You .... a seat belt in your car.
   a) needing b) need to c) need d) needs
2. You need to .... a helmet.
   a) wears b) wearing c) wear d) wore
3. You .... to look left and right when you cross the road.
   a) read b) need c) drink d) play
4. You .... a green light to cross the road.
   a) must b) can c) need d) should
5. You need .... left and right.
   a) looked b) to look c) looking d) look
6. We .... safe roads.
   a) need to b) needs c) needing d) need

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. You .... (need to) a helmet on your bike.
2. You need to .... (looks) left and right.
3. You need .... (of) wait for the green light.
4. We .... (need to) healthy food.
5. We .... (need) be careful on the road.

Help your child practice making sentences with "need".
ساعد طفلك أن يتدرب على تكوين جمل مستخدمًا الفعل need.

Lesson (2 / B) Be careful on the roads

Vocabulary المفردات

young man	شاب	wrong	خطأ
motorbike	دراجة نارية (بخارية)	right	صواب - صح
crosswalk	معبر المشاة	hospital	مستشفى
shocked	مصدوم	interesting	شيق
leg	ساق	boring	ممل
ambulance	سيارة إسعاف	kind	طيب / عطوف
fast	سريع	crash	اصطدام / تصادم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
work	يعمل	worked
stop	يتوقف	stopped
call	يتصل	called
learn	يتعلم	learned/t
follow	يتبع	followed
want	يريد	wanted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
drive	يقود	drove
hurt	يصيب - يؤلم	hurt
feel	يشعر	felt
understand	يفهم	understood
wear	يرتدي	wore
fall	يسقط	fell

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

be careful	كن حريصًا / احذر	fall over	يسقط
in a hurry	في عجلة من أمره/متعجل	feel bad	يشعر بالسوء
too fast	سريع جدًا	take notes	يدون ملاحظات
cross the street	يعبر الشارع	call for	يستدعي
by motorbike	بدراجة نارية	drive through	يقود خلال

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Be careful on the roads!





Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister. They love their school. Their teachers are very kind.
Hani is a young man. He works in the city and he goes to work by motorbike. Today, he was in a hurry.
Mazen and Dalida walk to school together. They cross the road at the crosswalk.

مازن وداليدا أخ وأخت. وهما يحبان مدرستهما. معلميهم طيبون للغاية. هاني شاب صغير. يعمل في المدينة ويذهب إلى عمله بالدراجة البخارية. اليوم كان في عجلة من أمره. يذهب مازن وداليدا إلى المدرسة معًا سيرًا على الأقدام. و يعبران الطريق عند معبر المشاة.

Today, they walked to the crosswalk and waited for the cars to stop. Then they walked into the road. Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk. Then Hani drove through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast.
Mazen fell over. He was very shocked. Dalida was scared, but she wanted to help her brother.

اليوم، مشيا إلى معبر المشاة وانتظرا حتى تتوقف السيارات، ثم مشيا في الطريق. مشى مازن إلى منتصف معبر المشاة، ثم قاد هاني دراجته البخارية خلال معبر المشاة. لم يتوقف لأنه كان يسير بسرعة كبيرة. وقع مازن، وكان مصدومًا للغاية. كانت داليدا خائفة ولكنها أرادت أن تساعد أخاها.

Hani stopped to help. Mazen wanted to go to school, but he hurt his leg. Hani called for an ambulance.
Mazen is now at the hospital with his mom and sister. Hani is feeling very bad.

توقف هاني ليقدم المساعدة. أراد مازن أن يذهب للمدرسة. ولكن ساقه كانت مصابة. اتصل هاني بالإسعاف: مازن الآن في المستشفى مع والدته وأخته. يشعر هاني بالسوء.

Help your child read and listen to a short story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. You need a helmet on your ....
   a) car b) plane c) bike d) bus
2. You need a .... in your car.
   a) seat belt b) helmet c) lifejacket d) hat
3. You need to .... left and right.
   a) take b) bake c) look d) eat
4. You need a .... light to cross the road.
   a) pink b) red c) yellow d) green

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I was scared when I saw the ....
   a) crash b) crosswalk c) helmet d) bike
2. Mazen wanted to go to school, but he .... his leg.
   a) took b) hurt c) went d) helped
3. Ahmed was .... a hurry.
   a) on b) under c) in d) at
4. You can go ...., then turn right.
   a) street b) strang c) straight d) store
5. He goes to work .... motorbike.
   a) at b) on c) in d) by
6. He couldn't stop because he was going too ....
   a) fast b) tall c) slow d) happy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

play - need - camels - helmet - seat belt

It is important to be safe on the road. You 1) .... to look at the road signs. There are sometimes 2) .... on the road. You need to look left and right. You can't 3) .... on the road. We need a 4) .... in our cars.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister. Hani is a young man. He works in the city and he goes to work by motorbike. Today, he was in a hurry. Mazen and Dalida walk to school together. They cross the road at the crosswalk. Today, Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk. Then Hani drove through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast. Mazen fell over. He was very shocked.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) Hani goes to work by ....

a) car   b) ship   c) bus   d) motorbike

2) When Mazen fell over, he was ....

a) delighted   b) shocked   c) happy   d) hungry

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Why didn't Hani stop? ....

4) Where does Hani work? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We need to .... (looks) left and right when we cross the road.
2. We .... (need to) safe roads.
3. We need .... (in) stop pollution.
4. I'm ill. I need to .... (goes) to hospital.



6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية

you can't park your car here

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Road safety

Guiding words:

(helmet - seat belt - green light)

Lesson (3 / A)

- Language
- Pronunciation

When we give strong advice, we use: عندما نعطي نصائح قوية نستخدم.

Sub. (الفاعل) + must + inf. المصدر يجب أن

e.g. We must listen for cars before we cross the road.

Sub. (الفاعل) + mustn't + inf. المصدر يجب ألا

e.g. You mustn't run on the road.

Taking Notes تدوين الملاحظات

When we take notes, we don't write complete sentences. We write important words. عندما ندون «ملاحظات»، لا نكتب جملاً كاملة و لكننا نكتب الكلمات الهامة.

Notes	Advice
cross - crosswalk	You must cross at the crosswalk.
don't run - roads	You mustn't run on the roads.
wear seat belt in car	You must wear seat belt in the car.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الكلمة الصحيحة

1. We must .... at the crosswalk.
   a) cross b) crosses c) crossing d) crossed
2. We .... run on the roads.
   a) can b) mustn't c) must d) should
3. We must .... the road signs.
   a) follows b) following c) followed d) follow
4. We must .... for cars before we cross the road.
   a) listens b) listened c) listen d) listening

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. You mustn't .... (runs) on the road.
2. You must .... (eating) healthy food.
3. You .... (must) talk in the library.
4. They .... (mustn't) wash their hands before eating.

Help your child practice making sentences with "must". ساعد طفلك أن يتدرب على جمل مستخدمًا must.

Pronunciation





crash
يصطدم بـ



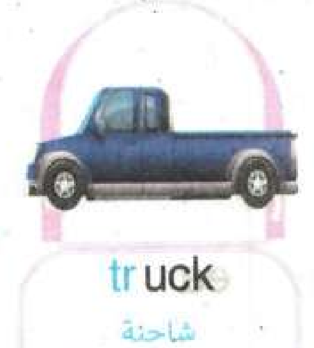
crosswalk
ممر مشاة





crowd
حشد / ازدحام





truck
شاحنة



train
قطار

Diphthongs الإدغام / Long vowels الأصوات المتحركة الطويلة

Two vowel sounds pronounced together, making one long vowel sound.

صوتان متحركان ينطقان معًا ليعطوا صوت ممدود واحد.

ai /eɪ/		oa /oʊ/		ea /iː/	
rain	مطر	float	تطفو	clean	نظيف
snail	حلزون	boat	مركب / قارب	dream	حلم
train	قطار	coat	معطف	sea	بحر

General Activities



Look and write the missing sound. انظر واكتب الصوت الناقص.



__ __uck



sn__ __l



c__ __t



__ __ash



Look, circle, and write. انظر وضع دائرة واكتب.

1 

tr / cr

__ __owd

2 

ai / ea

cl__ __n

3 

ai / ea

r__ __n

3 Read and circle the odd sound out. اقرأ ثم ضع دائرة حول الصوت الغريب.

1. crowd - crash - crosswalk - train
2. dream - sea - float - clean
3. rain - coat - boat - float



Read and sort. اقرأ وصنف.

crash - dream - sea - snail - crosswalk - truck - train - rain

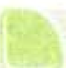
tr	cr	ea	ai
....	....	....	....
....	....	....	....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3 / B)

Air Pollution



Vocabulary المفردات

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	mask	كمامة / قناع	asthma	الربو
dangerous	خطير	chemicals	مواد كيميائية	fires	نيران
electric buses	حافلات كهربائية	dirty	قذر - متسخ	heating	جهاز التدفئة
photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئي	rice straw	قش الأرز	crops	محاصيل
polluted air	هواء ملوث	sick	مريض	shade	ظل
solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	idea	فكرة	clean	ينظف / نظيف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
breathe	يتنفس	breathed
cough	يكح / يسعل	coughed
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled
cover	يغطي	covered
allow	يسمح	allowed
plant	يزرع	planted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
put	يضع	put
make	يصنع / يسبب	made
feel	يشعر	felt
take	يأخذ	took
drive	يقود	drove
buy	يشتري	bought

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

put ..... into	يضع ... في	parts of	أجزاء من
drive to	يوصل بالسيارة إلى	go into	يدخل في
dangerous for	خطير على	burn straw	يحرق القش
worried about	قلق بشأن	have asthma	مصاب بالربو
look pretty	تبدو جميلة	take a bus	يستقل حافلة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Why is air pollution dangerous?

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous.
Air pollution is very dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.
Does this happen to you in your city or town? Is the air dirty or clean?
Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution.

المدن بها سيارات كثيرة. السيارات تسبب تلوث الهواء. فهي تضع المواد الكيميائية في الهواء. لا يمكننا دائمًا رؤية المواد الكيميائية، لكنها خطيرة. تلوث الهواء خطر علينا. عندما نتنفس الهواء الملوث، نسعل ونشعر بالمرض. هل يحدث هذا لك في مدينتك أو بلدتك؟ هل الهواء ملوث أم نظيف؟ تحاول بعض المدن وقف تلوث الهواء.

In London, England, parents do not drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near the school.

في لندن ،إنجلترا، الآباء لا يوصلون أطفالهم إلى المدرسة بالسيارة. يمشي الأطفال أو يذهبون إلى المدرسة بالدراجة. السيارات لا تقترب من المدرسة.

In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.

في شنتشن، الصين لديهم حافلات كهربائية. هذه الحافلات لا تسبب تلوث الهواء.

In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers wanted to have cleaner air. To do that, they stopped burning rice straw. They used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their crops.

في الغربية، مصر، أراد المزارعون الحصول على هواء أنظف. للقيام بذلك، توقفوا عن حرق قش الأرز. استخدموا القش لصنع طعام لحيواناتهم وتغطية محاصيلهم.

In Paris, France, cars can't go into some parts of the city. In these places, you can only walk or take a bus.

في باريس، فرنسا، لا يمكن للسيارات الدخول إلى بعض أجزاء المدينة. في هذه الأماكن، يمكنك فقط المشي أو ركوب الحافلة.

In Copenhagen, Denmark, there are more bikes than people and large parts of the city don't allow cars.
These are all good ideas to stop air pollution in cities.

في كوبنهاجن، الدنمارك، عدد الدراجات أكثر من عدد الناس، والأجزاء الكبيرة من المدينة لا تسمح بالسيارات.
هذه كلها أفكار جيدة لمنع تلوث الهواء في المدن.

Which idea do you like best?

أي فكرة تفضلها أكثر؟

Help your child know how to stop air pollution.
ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يمنع تلوث الهواء.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

A : Today I am talking to Doctor Helen Walker about air pollution. Helen, why are you worried about this subject?

أتحدث اليوم مع الدكتورة هيلين والكر عن تلوث الهواء. هيلين، لماذا أنت قلقة من هذا الموضوع؟

B : Because one of my sons has very bad asthma and I think it is because of the dirty air in our city. I wanted to say something to help him and other children.

لأن أحد أبنائي يعاني من الربو الشديد وأعتقد أنه بسبب الهواء الملوث في مدينتنا. أردت أن أقول شيئًا ما لأساعده وأساعد الأطفال الآخرين.

A : What can we do to help make the air cleaner?

ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل لجعل الهواء أنظف؟

B : I have some ideas. First of all, we need to cut the amount we use our cars. We can try to buy from stores near our house. Children can try to walk to school.

لدي بعض الأفكار. أولاً، نحتاج إلى خفض كمية استخدامنا لسيارتنا. يمكننا محاولة الشراء من المتاجر القريبة من منزلنا. يمكن للأطفال محاولة المشي إلى المدرسة.

A : But sometimes children live a long way from school.

لكن أحيانًا يعيش الأطفال على بعد مسافة طويلة من المدرسة.

B : Then they could go by bike or maybe take the bus.

إذن يمكنهم الذهاب بالدراجة أو ركوب الحافلة.

A : Good idea, many schools have buses. What are your other ideas?

فكرة جيدة. العديد من المدارس لديها حافلات. ما أفكارك الأخرى؟

B : Try not to have open fires at home. If it's cold, use the heating. And use renewable energy if you can, like solar power -renewable energy keeps the air clean!

حاولي ألا يكون هناك نيران مكشوفة في المنزل. إذا كان الجو باردًا، استخدمي جهاز التدفئة. واستخدمي الطاقة المتجددة إذا استطعت، مثل الطاقة الشمسية - الطاقة المتجددة تحافظ على نظافة الهواء!

A : Oh, that's helpful. What about more trees?

أوه، هذا مفيد. ماذا عن المزيد من الأشجار؟

B : Yes, that's an excellent idea. We need to plant trees. Trees clean the air because they use the chemicals for their growth through photosynthesis. They also make cities look pretty and give us shade on a hot day!

نعم، هذه فكرة ممتازة. نحن بحاجة لزراعة الأشجار. تقوم الأشجار بتنظيف الهواء لأنها تستخدم المواد الكيميائية لنموها من خلال عملية البناء الضوئي. كما أنها تجعل المدن تبدو جميلة وتمنحنا الظل في اليوم الحار!

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Farmers wanted to have .... air.
   a) cleaner b) dirtier c) bad d) polluted
2. They stopped burning .... straw.
   a) corn b) rice c) bean d) wheat
3. They used the straw to make ....
   a) drinks b) gas c) food d) juice
4. They used the straw to cover their ....
   a) animals b) fish c) water d) crops

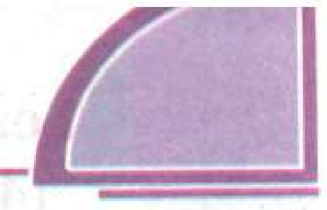
2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة

1. Cars make air ....
   a) pollute b) pollution c) polluting d) pollutes
2. The boy is wearing a .... to protect himself from pollution.
   a) hat b) mask c) skirt d) cap
3. Cars put .... into the air.
   a) fruits b) vegetables c) oxgen d) chemicals
4. Chemicals are .... for us.
   a) safe b) kind c) dangerous d) good
5. We .... when we breathe polluted air.
   a) sleep b) cough c) laugh d) cry
6. The children in England .... to school.
   a) swim b) try c) cycle d) fly
7. .... buses don't make air pollution.
   a) Electricity b) Flying c) Petrol d) Electric
8. Farmers stopped .... rice straw.
   a) burning b) eating c) recycling d) growing
9. Farmers used the straw to .... their crops.
   a) cover b) uncover c) eat d) sell
10. You can only walk or .... a bus in this city.
   a) bake b) make c) take d) do

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.





3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

chemicals - air pollution - cough - run - dangerous

Cities have many cars. Cars make 1) .... They put 2) .... into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are 3) .... Air pollution is very dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we 4) .... and feel sick.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Some cities are trying to stop air pollution. In London, England, parents don't drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses. These buses don't make air pollution.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) Cars put chemicals into the ....

a) air b) water c) land d) rivers

2) In China, they have electric ....

a) planes b) ships c) buses d) bikes

B) Answer the following questions.

3) What is the general idea of the text? ....

4) How do children in England go to school? ....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Guiding words: **Air pollution**

(cars - chemicals - dangerous)

....

....

....

Lessons (4 & 5) Writing & Project

Vocabulary المفردات

energy-saving lightbulbs	لمبات موفرة للطاقة
public transportation	وسائل مواصلات عامة
car-sharing	مشاركة السيارة
car-free roads	طرق خالية من السيارات
cycle	يركب الدراجة

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

classmates	زملاء الفصل	fresh air	هواء نقي
road signs	لافتات الطريق	traffic	حركة المرور
factories	مصانع	apartment	شقة سكنية
balcony	شرفة / بلكونة	report	تقرير
leaflet	نشرة / منشور	gas	غاز

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
share	يشارك	shared	travel	يسافر	traveled
decide	يقرر	decided	cross	يعبر	crossed
improve	يُحسن	improved	hear	يسمع	heard
reduce	يُقلل	reduced	put in	يضع في	put in
increase	يزداد / يزيد	increased	burn	يحرق	burnt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the side of	على جانب	go with	يذهب مع
talk about	يتكلم عن	information about	معلومات عن
decide to	يقرر أن	in the same car	في نفس السيارة
do research	يقوم بعمل بحث	on the balcony	في الشرفة / البلكونة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Youssef's report

Last week I heard Dr Helen Walker talking about air pollution. I liked her ideas and I did some research. I talked to my family about what we can do:

الأسبوع الماضي سمعت الدكتورة هيلين والكر تتحدث عن تلوث الهواء. لقد أعجبتني أفكارها وقمت ببعض الأبحاث. تحدثت إلى عائلتي حول ما يمكننا القيام به:

- We can have energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartment.
- We can use buses and trains more.
- We can share a car with a friend sometimes.
- We can walk and not always go by car.
- We can have many plants on our balcony.

- يمكن أن يكون لدينا مصابيح كهربائية موفرة للطاقة في شقتنا
- يمكننا استخدام الحافلات والقطارات أكثر
- يمكننا مشاركة السيارة مع صديق في بعض الأحيان
- يمكننا المشي ولا نذهب دائمًا بالسيارة
- يمكن أن يكون لدينا العديد من النباتات في شرفتنا

We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I now go to school by bike. My sister, Noura, walks to her school.

قررنا تغيير بعض الأشياء كعائلة. يذهب أبي الآن للعمل مع صديقه في نفس السيارة. تركب أمي الحافلة إلى العمل. هي لا تقود سيارة. أنا أذهب الآن إلى المدرسة بالدراجة. تمشي أختي نورا إلى مدرستها.

We have more plants in the living room and on the balcony. When our lightbulbs stop working, we can put in energy-saving lightbulbs. I'm excited!

Youssef

لدينا المزيد من النباتات في غرفة المعيشة وفي الشرفة.
عندما تتوقف مصابيحنا الكهربائية عن العمل، يمكننا وضع مصابيح موفرة للطاقة. أنا متحمس!
يوسف

Help your child read about ways to reduce air pollution.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن طرق تقليل تلوث الهواء.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Good ideas to reduce air pollution



Don't burn rice straw.

لا تحرق قش الأرز.



Have cleaner gas in cars.

ضع غاز أكثر نظافة في سيارتك.



Increase public transportation.

قم بزيادة استخدام وسائل النقل العام.



Have some car-free roads.

تخصيص بعض الطرق الخالية من السيارات.



Travel on foot or by bike.

تنقّل سيرًا على الأقدام أو بالدراجة.

Project *Road safety leaflet*

ROAD SAFETY

main heading
عنوان رئيسي



sub-heading
عنوان فرعي

photo
صورة فوتوغرافية

paragraph
فقرة

Be safe on the road
Use the crosswalks.
Walk slowly - don't run.

Watch the traffic
Listen for cars.
Don't cross from behind a car.

Read the road signs
Read the road signs.
They give you important information about the road.

Help your child research and make a leaflet about road safety.

ساعد طفلك أن يبحث و يقوم بعمل نشرة عن الأمان على الطريق.

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الكلمة الصحيحة

1. Don't burn .... straw to keep the village clean.
   a) tomato b) rice c) carrot d) potatoes
2. Increase .... transportation to have clean air.
   a) individual b) special c) private d) public
3. Have cleaner .... in cars.
   a) gas b) water c) milk d) juice
4. Have some .... free roads to reduce air pollution.
   a) car b) train c) plane d) boat
5. Travel .... foot or by bike to your work.
   a) by b) in c) on d) at
6. We should have more plants on our ....
   a) car b) bus c) balcony d) bike
7. He goes to work with his friend .... the same car.
   a) at b) on c) in d) by
8. My dad likes .... - sharing.
   a) boat b) train c) car d) plane

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

balcony - lightbulbs - plants - excited - exciting

We decided to change some things to reduce air pollution. We have more 1) .... in the living room and on the 2) .... When our 3) .... stop working, we can put in energy-saving lightbulbs. I'm 4) ....



Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

We can do a lot of things to reduce air pollution. We can have energy - saving lightbulbs in our apartment. We can use buses and trains more. We can share a car with a friend sometimes. We can walk and not always go by car. We can have many plants on our balcony. We also shouldn't burn rice straw. We should have cleaner gas in cars.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) We can use .... and train more.

a) planes b) buses c) cars d) taxies

2) We can .... a car with a friend.

a) buy b) reduce c) share d) burn

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Should we burn rice straw? Why? ....

4) What can we do in our apartment to reduce air pollution? ....

4 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

how does mom go to work

....



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

How to be safe on the road

Guiding words:

(crosswalks - slowly - don't run)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Review on Unit (11)

Vocabulary

metro	مترو	transportation	وسائل المواصلات	shocked	مصدوم
bus	أتوبيس/حافلة	ambulance	عربة إسعاف	fell over	سقط
plane	طائرة	rail	سكة حديد	left	يسار
boat	قارب	in a hurry	في عجلة من أمره/ متعجل	right	يمين
train	قطار	chemicals	مواد كيميائية	by bus	بالأتوبيس
taxi	تاكسي	on foot	سيراً على الأقدام	through air	عبر الجو

Phonics



Language

- You need a seat belt in your car.
- You need to look left and right.


You can go straight and turn right.


You can't swim here.


You must wait for the green light.

Help your child revise unit (11).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الحادية عشرة.

Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

"Means of transportation"

There are many kinds of transportation. Trains move on a rail. We can see ships and boats on the water. We can see cars, buses and taxis on our roads.

"My favorite transportation"

My name is Ziad. I'm in primary four. My favorite transportation is a ship. I love traveling on water. I enjoy seeing the water and the wonderful trees around it. I also like being on a boat.

"Road safety"

We should be careful on the road to be safe. We must listen for cars before we cross the road. We must wear seat belts in cars. We need a helmet on our bikes. We mustn't run at the crosswalk.

"Air pollution"

Air pollution is very dangerous. Cities have many cars. They put chemicals into the air. Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution. In England, children walk or cycle to school.

Help your child how to write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يكتب فقرة.

Dictation on Unit (11)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning
....	أتوبيس / حافلة
....	قطار
....	سيرًا على الأقدام
....	سفينة
....	على الماء

Word	Meaning
....	مترو
....	قارب
....	تاكسي
....	طائرة
....	سيارة

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning
....	خوذة
....	بأمان
....	شاب
....	اصطدام - تصادم
....	معبر المشاة
....	لافتة
....	كن حذرًا

Word	Meaning
....	حزام أمان
....	السلامة على الطريق
....	اتجه يمينًا
....	زحام
....	متعجل
....	الضوء الأخضر
....	سيارة إسعاف

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning
....	شاحنة
....	مطر
....	حلزون

Word	Meaning
....	مواد كيميائية
....	مريض
....	كمامة - قناع

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning
....	مشاركة السيارة
....	يقلل
....	لافتات الطريق

Word	Meaning
....	مصابيح موفرة للطاقة
....	يُحسن
....	هواء نقي

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (11)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Mazen and Dalida are brother and ....
   a) sister b) child c) cousin d) friend
2. They love their ....
   a) park b) zoo c) school d) library
3. Their teachers are very ....
   a) bad b) useless c) unkind d) kind
4. Their father is a ....
   a) doctor b) vet c) teacher d) nurse

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. When I travel by ...., I go through the air.
   a) train b) plane c) car d) bus
2. You need a .... in your car.
   a) cycle b) helmet c) seat belt d) cap

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

by - same - near - takes - far

We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the 1) .... car. Mom 2) .... the bus to work. I now go to school 3) .... bike. My sister, Noura, walks to school because her school is 4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.
اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Mazen and her sister Dalia walk to school together. They cross the road at the crosswalk. Yesterday, they walked to the crosswalk and waited for the cars to stop. Then they walked into the road.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Today, Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk. Then Hani drove his motorbike through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast. Mazen fell over. He was very shocked. Dalia was scared, but she wanted to help her brother.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) Dalia is Mazen's ....
   a) brother b) mum c) sister d) friend

2) The word "fast" means ....
   a) slowly b) happily c) carefully d) quickly

B) Answer the following questions.

3) How do Mazen and Dalia go to school?

....

4) Why didn't Hani stop?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We need to .... (wears) a helmet on our bikes.
2. You .... (must) run on roads.
3. Farmers must .... (stopped) burning rice straw.
4. We .... (need to) a seat belt in our cars.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

mazen and Dalia go to school on foot

....



7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Reducing air pollution

Guiding words:

(burn straw - bike - share car)

Al- Azhar Corner

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. My favorite transportation is a ....
   a) ship b) car c) plane d) bike
2. I love traveling on ....
   a) air b) water c) foot d) rail
3. I go to school on ....
   a) bike b) foot c) bus d) taxi

2) Read and complete the dialogue with:

helmet - safe - school - bike

Ali : How do you go to 1) ....?

Ahemd : I go by 2) ....

Ali : What do you need to be 3) ....?

Ahmed : I need a 4) .... on my bike.

3) Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. We go to the .... to travel by plane.
   a) station b) airport c) stadium d) school
2. Hani called for a/an .... because Mazen hurt his leg.
   a) car b) bus c) ambulance d) train
3. Which is your favorite .... ? A ship.
   a) game b) transportation c) subject d) game
4. He goes to work .... a bus.
   a) by b) in c) on d) at
5. You need to .... left and right.
   a) look b) looks c) looked d) looking

4) Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1) the -at - Cross -the -cross -walk -road -.
2) go -school - They -to -foot -on -.
3) run -mustn't -the -on - You -road -.
4) is -pollution - Air -dangerous -very -.
5) travel -on - How -we -can -water -?



FICTION READER

DALIA SAVES THE VILLAGE!

داليا تنقذ القرية!

BY NICOLA GARDNER

Unit (12)

FICTION READER
DALIA SAVES THE VILLAGE!

The Characters

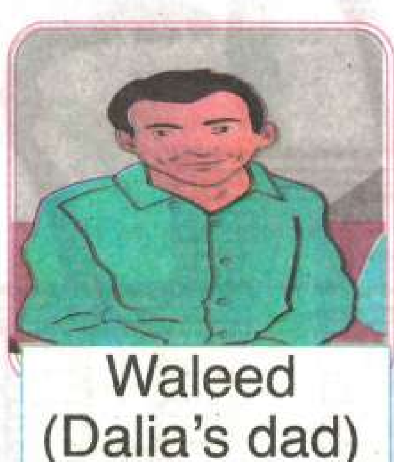

Dalia


Grandpa


Grandma


Tarek (Dalia's brother)


Gameela (Dalia's mom)


Waleed (Dalia's dad)

The setting المكان والزمان

Places

- A village in Egypt
- Dalia's house
- Grandparents' house

Time

- morning
- evening

Help your child identify the characters of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة.

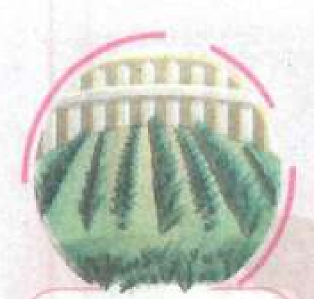
PICTURE DICTIONARY

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردّد.



wheat
قمح



crop
محصول



maize
ذرة



irrigation
الري



irrigation canal
قناة الري



wheat flour
دقيق قمح

Beginning



- Dalia does research about crops in Egypt.
- The crops are not growing well in the village.
- Dalia contacts everyone in the village on social media.

Middle



- The irrigation canal is blocked with trash.
- The villagers start to clear the trash.
- Now the water isn't polluted.

End



- The water comes back and the crops grow again.
- Some villagers start to grow wheat.
- The villagers make bread and biscuits to sell them.

Beginning

The Problem

المشكلة



Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. One evening she is doing her homework on her computer. She is doing research about crops in Egypt, like wheat, maize, and rice, and it is very interesting. Wheat is an important crop in our country and we use it to make bread. Dalia looks at the pictures of delicious Egyptian bread. Dalia likes baladi bread best. Which is your favorite?

تعيش داليا في قرية في مصر. ذات مساء تقوم بأداء واجبها المنزلي على حاسبها الآلي. و تجري بحثًا عن المحاصيل الزراعية في مصر مثل القمح و الذرة و الأرز وهذا شيق للغاية. القمح محصول هام في بلدنا ونستخدمه في صناعة الخبز. تنظر داليا إلى صور الخبز المصري اللذيذ. وأفضل خبز تحبه هو الخبز البلدي. ما هو خبزك المفضل؟

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Dalia's mom, Gameela, is speaking to Dalia's dad, Waleed, who looks sad. 'The crops are not growing well in the village. There is a problem with the water and we have no irrigation,' says Gameela to Dalia. 'We need to help everyone in the village with their crops.' Dalia's brother, Tarek, says, 'But what can we do?' Dalia says, 'It's very simple. Let's call everyone in the village on social media. We need to help our village.'

تتحدث جميلة، والدة داليا، إلى وليد، والد داليا، الذي يبدو حزينًا. تقول جميلة لداليا: "إن المحاصيل لا تنمو بشكل جيد في القرية . هناك مشكلة في المياه ولا يوجد ري. نحتاج أن نساعد الجميع في القرية فيما يخص محاصيلهم" . يقول «طارق» أخو داليا: "لكن ماذا بوسعنا أن نفعل؟" تقول داليا: "إن الأمر سهل جدًا. هيا نتواصل مع الجميع في القرية عبْر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي .نحن نحتاج أن نساعد قريتنا".





Dalia's family gets water from the Nile. But the irrigation canal is not working. She tells everyone in the village about this problem on social media, then meets everyone in the main square.

A lot of villagers say they can help.

تحصل عائلة داليا على المياه من النيل. لكن قناة الري لا تعمل. تقوم داليا بإخبار الجميع في القرية عن هذه المشكلة عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي، ثم تقابلهم في الميدان الرئيسي. يعرض عليها الكثير من القرويين المساعدة.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Activities

1 Read and tick (✓) or (×).

1) Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. ☐
2) Dalia is a teacher. ☐
3) Dalia is doing research about crops. ☐
4) Dalia doesn't like baladi bread. ☐
5) The crops are not growing well in the village. ☐
6) Dalia doesn't want to help her village. ☐
7) The irrigation canal is not working. ☐
8) Villagers don't want to help. ☐

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

water - crops - village - social media - baladi

1) Dalia lives in a .... in Egypt.
2) Dalia is doing research about .... in Egypt.
3) Dalia likes .... bread best.
4) There is a problem with the .... in the village.
5) Dalia calls everyone in the village on ....

3 Answer the following questions.

1) Where does Dalia live?
....
2) What does Dalia like best?
....
3) Why are not the crops growing well in the village?
....
4) How does Dalia call everyone in the village?
....

Middle

The Villagers meet

أهل القرية يلتقون



The next day everyone gets together in the center of the village. Some people come on foot, and some by bike. Some people come by boat or by car from another village to help.

Everyone is very excited to help with the problem. They meet at Dalia's grandparents' house. Dalia's grandma gives them tea and cookies.

و في اليوم التالي يتجمع الجميع في وسط القرية. يأتي بعض الناس سيرًا على الأقدام ، و البعض يأتي بالدراجات.
وبعض الأشخاص بالقارب أو بالسيارة من قرية أخرى للمساعدة. الجميع متحمس للمساعدة في حل هذه المشكلة .
يتقابلون في منزل أجداد داليا. و تقدم جدة داليا لهم الشاي والكعك.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

DALIA SAVES THE VILLAGE!

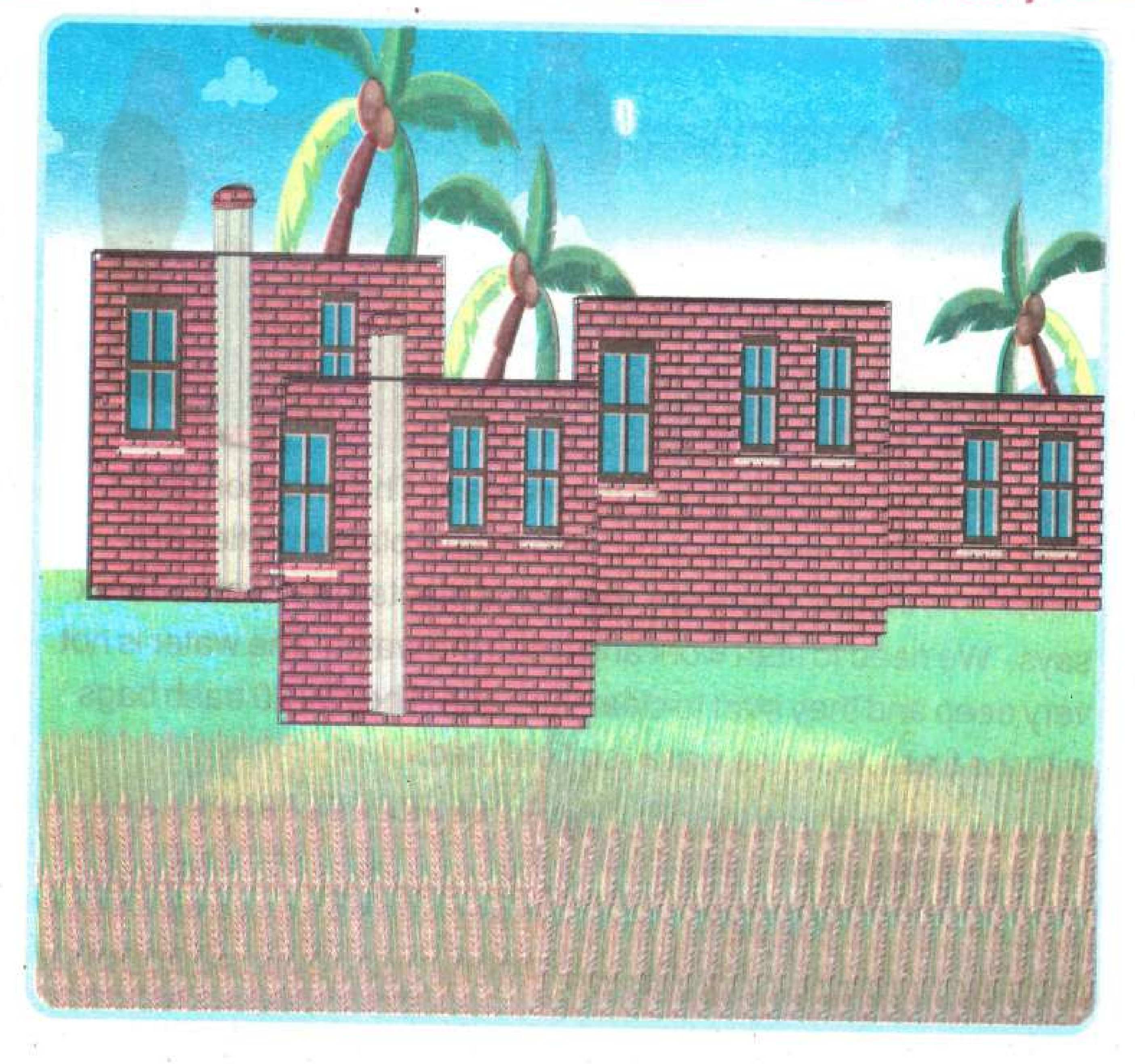


Dalia and her family go to see the problem. The irrigation canal that brings the water is **blocked** with trash – plastic bottles and **household** things. There are also some plants in the water. Tarek says, 'We need to start work and clean the water.' The water is not very deep and they start to clear the trash. They fill 20 trash bags with the trash. Now the water isn't polluted.

تذهب داليا و أسرتها لمعاينة المشكلة ، يتبين أن قناة الري التي تمدهم بالماء مسدودة بالنفايات مثل زجاجات البلاستيك. والأغراض المنزلية. كما يوجد أيضاً بعض النباتات في الماء. يقول طارق: "نحتاج إلى أن نبدأ العمل وننظف المياه." المياه ليست عميقة جداً ويبدأون في إزالة القمامة. ويقومون بملء عشرين كيساً من القمامة. و الآن أصبح الماء غير ملوث.



Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again. Everyone is very happy. They can grow food on their land and they can sell their fruit and vegetables to buy other things. Their lives become easier. But some of the crops are not very good.

تعود المياه إلى القرية وتنمو المحاصيل مرة أخرى. الجميع سعداء، حيث يمكنهم زراعة الطعام في أرضهم ويمكنهم بيع فاكهتهم وخضرواتهم لشراء أشياء أخرى. تصبح حياتهم أسهل، و لكن بعض المحاصيل ليس بحال جيدة.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Activities

1 Read and tick (✓) or (×).

1) The villagers are excited to help with the problem. ( )
2) The villagers meet at Dalia's house. ( )
3) Dalia's grandma gives the villagers coffee. ( )
4) The irrigation canal is blocked with trash. ( )
5) They fill 20 trash bags with the trash. ( )
6) The water doesn't come back to the village. ( )

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

tea - cookies - excited - villagers - crops - trash - blocked - plants

1) Everyone is very .... to help with the problem.
2) The .... meet at Dalia's grandparents' house.
3) Dalia's grandma gives them .... and ....
4) The irrigation canal is .... with trash.
5) There are some .... in the water.
6) The villagers fill 20 .... bags with the trash.
7) The water comes back to the village and the .... grow again.

3 Answer the following questions.

1) Where do the villagers meet?
....
2) Who gives the villagers tea and cookies?
....
3) Why is the irrigation canal blocked?
....
4) What do they do with the irrigation canal?
....

End

Dalia's Plan

خطة داليا

Dalia has a plan. She thinks the villagers can produce more food. She says they should try wheat — she tells them about her research. She says wheat grows very well in Egypt and is great for making delicious bread and cakes.

Some villagers like the idea — they start to grow wheat in some of their fields.

لدى داليا خطة - تعتقد داليا أن أهل القرية بمكنهم إنتاج مزيد من الغذاء. وتقول إنه ينبغي عليهم تجربة زراعة القمح وتخبرهم عن بحثها. وتقول إن القمح ينمو بشكل جيد جدًا في مصر وهو رائع لصناعة الخبز والكعك اللذيذ.

بعض أهل القرية تعجبهم الفكرة -ويبدأون في زراعة القمح في بعض حقولهم.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



From the wheat they can make flour. From the flour they can make delicious Egyptian bread. Grandma can make more of her awesome cookies. The villagers make bread and cookies to sell to other villages.

يمكنهم صناعة الدقيق من القمح. ومن الدقيق يمكنهم صناعة الخبز المصري اللذيذ. كما يمكن للجدة صناعة المزيد من الكعك الرائع . يقوم أهل القرية بصناعة الخبز والكعك لكي يبيعوه للقرى الأخرى.



In a few years, everything is better in the village. Dalia walks around the village and sees the changes. She is very proud. When she grows up, she works with agriculture to help other people with their crops.

وخلال سنوات قليلة، يتحسن كل شيء في القرية. تتجول داليا في القرية وترى التغييرات. وهي فخورة جدًا. وعندما تكبر، ستعمل في مجال الزراعة لمساعدة الناس في محاصيلهم.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Activities

1 Read and tick (✓) or (×).

1) Dalia thinks the villagers can produce more food. ( )
2) Wheat doesn't grow well in Egypt. ( )
3) The villagers make flour from the wheat. ( )
4) The villagers sell bread and cookies to other villages. ( )
5) Everything is worse in the village. ( )
6) Dalia is very proud. ( )

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

agriculture - bread - cookies - Some villagers - Wheat - plan - flour - proud

1) Dalia has a ....
2) .... grows very well in Egypt.
3) .... grow wheat in some of their fields.
4) The villagers make .... from the wheat.
5) The villagers make .... and .... to sell to other villages.
6) Dalia is very .... of the village.
7) When Dalia grows up, she works with ....

3 Answer the following questions.

1) What is Dalia's plan?

....

2) What can villagers make from the wheat?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Activities on Review (4)

1 **Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.** استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. It's .... to be safe online.
   a) unimportant b) important c) useless d) bad
2. You .... keep your password secret.
   a) shouldn't b) should c) mustn't d) can't
3. You should .... to be friends only with people you know.
   a) share b) keep c) accept d) make
4. You .... share your personal information.
   a) shouldn't b) must c) can d) should

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Cars and buses are means of ....
   a) transportations b) foods c) information d) sports
2. I try to be .... and think about new ideas.
   a) stupid b) creative c) bad d) angry

3 **Read and complete the text with words from the box.** اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

logged in - tagged - mom - shouldn't - should

Last week I wasn't very happy with my friend.
My friend 1) .... me in a photo and it showed on my social media page. When I 2) ...., I saw the photo. I was buying a present for my 3) .... for her birthday and it was a surprise! I talked to another friend and he said, "You 4) .... change your settings so you can check photos you are tagged in!"



Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My favorite transportation is by boat. When you are on the water, you can see the river animals and plants. It is also very peaceful because you only hear the water. I like ships too, but I prefer smaller transportation on the water. Buses are good too, but sometimes they get very crowded, particularly after school and work, when lots of people go home. It's better when they're empty and you are on the bus with one or two people. You can see a lot of the city from the bus. But the problem is you stop all the time!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) My favorite transportation is by ....
a) ship b) boat c) plane d) bike

2) You can see the river animals and ....
a) plants b) stars c) planets d) schools

B) Answer the following questions.

3) What is the main idea of the text? ....

4) When do buses get very crowded? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. You .... (need to) a helmet when you are on your bike.
2. You must .... (wears) a seat belt in your car.
3. You should .... (helped) your parents.
4. You .... (should) tell your password to everyone.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

you need to wear a helmet on your bike

....



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Air pollution

Guiding words:

(cars - pollution - chemicals)

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Listening Texts

Unit (7)

Lesson (3)

In the city, the smoke from the cars covered the stars. The noise was incredibly loud. The city is exciting but it's too scary. The country life is quieter. It is cleaner than the city.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Grandpa says that his mom and dad drove gas cars. They were very noisy. Our town had a cleaner area, but it was very old. My dad worked in a shoe store on Saturdays. Our town is different now.

Activities on Unit (7)

The Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. It's about 6.670 kilometers long. It is like travelling to the center of the earth. The Nile has two branches in Egypt.

Al-Azhar Corner

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It has two branches in Egypt. The Nile crocodile lives in it.

Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

Nada and her family went to the supermarket yesterday at night. They bought many things. Nada bought two bottles of milk. Nada's mom bought two bars of soap, two pieces of cheese and a packet of cookies.

Lesson (2)

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water. We saw lots of fish and an octopus, too! Grandpa caught a fish.

Lesson (3)

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. Many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset. In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year.

Lessons (4 & 5)

We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and I drank a bottle of orange juice. I also ate some salad and fruit.

Activities on Unit (8)

Eid is a time of celebration and for being happy. People say Eid Mubarak to their friends. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families. They eat delicious food and celebrate!

Al-Azhar Corner

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandparents. They live by the sea. We saw lots of fish.

February Test

Last Monday we went to Alexandria to see my grandparents who live by the sea. We swam in the water. It was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish and my grandpa caught a big fish, too. Grandma made the fish into a lovely dish.

Unit (9)

Lesson (1)

Musical chairs is a game in which you run but be ready to sit! How to play: put out some chairs. If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs. Players run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without the chair is 'out'. Take away one chair and play again.

Lesson (3)

We make a lot of movies and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important prizes. And of course, we love sports! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of one very famous karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.

Activities on Unit (9)

More than half of Egyptians are under the age of 30. This means we are full of energy. We are helpful to each other and we are very friendly to visitors. We are very hospitable people.

Al-Azhar Corner

The Egyptian food can be described with one word: wonderful. The most famous is ful medames. Basbousa is a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup.

Activities on Review (3)

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. The sea was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too!

Unit (10)

Lesson (1)

Last week I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into a library website and created a password. I found information. Our teacher, Miss Lamia, loved our presentation. Hooray!

Lesson (2)

Magdy started a new school. He had a problem with online bullying. Sherif said that Magdy was stupid. I talked to his teacher. Now Magdy is happy.

Lesson (3)

Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant. Rania was sad because her children love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy for their children.

Activities on Unit (10)

Last week I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into a library website and created a password. I found information. I worked with my friend, Yara. Our teacher, Miss Lamia, loved our presentation!

Al-Azhar Corner

Last week I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into library website and I created a strong password. I got the information.

March Test

Egypt is a great country. It is famous for its history. More than half of Egyptians are under the age of 30. Egyptians are full of energy. They are helpful to each other. They are very friendly to visitors and guests.

Unit (11)

Lesson (1)

There are many kinds of transportation. When I travel by plane, I go through the air. When I travel by ship and boat, I'm on the water. When I travel by bus and taxi, I'm on the road. I travel to Luxor from Cairo by train.

Lesson (2)

Most children need to know how to be safe on the road. Here are some tips:
- You need a helmet on your bike.
- You need a seat belt in your car.
- You need to look left and right.
- You need a green light to cross the road.

Lesson (3)

In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers wanted to have cleaner air. To do that, they stopped burning rice straw. They used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their crops.

Activities on Unit (11)

Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister. They love their school. Their teachers are very kind. Their father is a teacher. He works in a school in the city.

Al-Azhar Corner

1) My favorite transportation is a ship. I love travelling on water. I go to school on foot.

Activities on Review (4)

-) It's important to be safe online. You should keep your password secret. You should accept to be friends only with people you know. You shouldn't share your personal information.

Primary 4

AL-BAHER

Connect

Final Revision

Second Term



LANGUAGE FOCUS

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

- We played football on this street.
- He pulled out an old, metal box.

Form



يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

يضاف (d , ed , ied) إلى الفعل المنتظم.

like → liked pull → pulled carry → carried

Spelling Notes:

١- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (e) يضاف (d) فقط.

like → liked live → lived

٢- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ثم نضيف (ied).

bury → buried study → studied

٣- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف متحرك يتم إضافة (ed) للفعل.

play → played stay → stayed

٤- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

stop → stopped travel → travelled

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي.

am / is → was are → were
swim → swam see → saw

Help your child use the past simple tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.

Language

Negative النفى

Subject (فاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. We didn't play football on this street.

- He didn't bury the box.

Questions

(Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

Did + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)...?

e.g. Did you do your homework?

- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q.W + did + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)...?

e.g. When did you get up?

- I got up at seven o'clock.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	ago	منذ
last (week/...)	(الأسبوع/...) الماضي	in the past	في الماضي

e.g. I studied English yesterday.

- Last Friday, he played football.
- Cairo was quiet many years ago.

Help your child use the past simple tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.

Verb to (be) in the past

was | **were**

I / He / She / It / A singular noun + was ....

e.g. - It was very quiet when I lived here.

We / You / They / A plural noun + were ....

e.g. - They were at the museum yesterday.

Negative النفى

He / She / It + was not (wasn't) ....

e.g. - Grandpa's village wasn't very noisy.

We / You / They + were not (weren't) ....

e.g. - There weren't any cars on the street.

Questions

(Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

Was + (he / she / it / a singular noun)...?

e.g. - Was Grandpa very excited?

- Yes, he was. - No, he wasn't.

Were + (we / you / they / a plural noun)...?

e.g. - Were they in the village?

- Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

Help your child revise "verb to be" in the past.
ساعد طفلك في مراجعة "verb to be" في الماضي.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
help	يساعد	helped	serve	يقدم	served
need	يحتاج	needed	listen	يستمع	listened
cry	يبكي	cried	work	يعمل	worked
pull	يسحب	pulled	enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
bury	يدفن	buried	use	يستخدم	used
walk	يمشي	walked	taste	يتذوق	tasted
study	يذاكر	studied	wrap	يلف / يغلف	wrapped
cross	يعبر	crossed	remember	يتذكر	remembered
look	ينظر	looked	try	يحاول	tried
wait	ينتظر	waited	talk	يتكلم	talked
rain	تمطر	rained	click on	ينقر على	clicked on
cover	يغطي	covered	decorate	يزين	decorated
carry	يحمل	carried	represent	يمثل	represented
want	يريد	wanted	celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
stay	يقيم / يبقى	stayed	snow	تثلج	snowed
happen	يحدث	happened	push	يدفع	pushed
ask	يسأل	asked	join	ينضم إلى	joined
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled	laugh	يضحك	laughed
tag	يشير	tagged	share	يشارك	shared
bully	يتنمر	bullied	watch	يشاهد	watched

Help your child revise the conjugation of verbs.
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع تصريف الأفعال.

Present		Past	Present		Past
move	يتحرك/ينتقل	moved	post	يرسل بالبريد	posted
travel	يسافر	travelled	upload	يرفع على النت	uploaded
follow	يتبع	followed	stop	يتوقف عن	stopped
kill	يقتل	killed	replace	يستبدل	replaced
harm	يضر/ يؤذي	harmed	thank	يشكر	thanked
save	ينقذ	saved	decide	يقرر	decided
breathe	يتنفس	breathed	pollute	يُلوّث	polluted
message	يرسل رسالة	messaged	solve	يحل	solved
copy	ينسخ	copied	learn	يتعلم	learned/t
chat	يدردش	chatted	log into	يسجل دخول	logged into
cough	يكح/يسعل	coughed	call	يتصل	called
improve	يحسّن	improved	increase	يزداد/يزيد	increased
invite	يدعو	invited	turn on	يشغّل	turned on
provide	يمد/يزود	provided	reduce	يقلل	reduced

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
ride	يركب	rode	choose	يختار	chose
write	يكتب	wrote	meet	يقابل	met
send	يرسل	sent	keep	يحافظ على	kept
get	يحصل على	got	fall	يقع	fell
make	يصنع	made	sit	يجلس	sat
spend	يقضي	spent	fly	يطير	flew

Help your child revise the conjugation of verbs.
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع تصريف الأفعال.

Language

Present		Past	Present		Past
hurt	يؤلم / يؤذى	hurt	grow	ينمو / يزرع	grew
come	يأتي	came	wear	يرتدي	wore
sell	يبيع	sold	have / has	يمتلك /يتناول	had
dig	يحفر	dug	break	يكسر	broke
say	يقول	said	get up	يستيقظ	got up
tell	يخبر	told	am / is	يكون	was
give	يعطي	gave	are	يكونوا	were
know	يعرف	knew	put on	يلبس / يرتدي	put on
hold	يمسك	held	throw	يلقي / يرمي	threw
run	يجري	ran	win	يفوز	won
go	يذهب	went	drive	يقود / يسوق	drove
drink	يشرب	drank	take off	يخلع	took off
think	يعتقد	thought	leave	يغادر	left
read	يقرأ	read	swim	يسبح	swam
eat	يأكل	ate	speak	يتحدث	spoke
find	يجد	found	take	يأخذ	took
sing	يغني	sang	hide	يختبئ	hid
feel	يشعر	felt	see	يرى	saw

Help your child revise the conjugation of verbs.
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع تصريف الأفعال.

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Grandpa .... very excited yesterday.
   a) was b) were c) be d) is
2. Last holiday, we .... in the village.
   a) was b) were c) are d) is
3. .... was very quiet.
   a) You b) It c) They d) We
4. There .... lots of visitors in the hotel last year.
   a) was b) is c) were d) are
5. In the past, there .... no planes.
   a) is b) was c) were d) are
6. I .... eight years old when I buried the box.
   a) is b) was c) were d) am
7. .... were very happy yesterday.
   a) They b) It c) He d) She
8. I .... seven years old last year.
   a) was b) were c) are d) is
9. We .... math yesterday.
   a) study b) studied c) studies d) studying
10. Last week, we .... to Damietta.
    a) go b) goes c) went d) going
11. Grandpa .... by the sea in the past.
    a) lived b) living c) lives d) live

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Language

12. Last summer, Dad .... a fish.

a) catch b) catches c) catching d) caught

13. Yesterday, they .... pizza.

a) eat b) ate c) eats d) eaten

14. The boys .... happy two days ago.

a) feel b) feeling c) feels d) felt

15. It .... hot yesterday.

a) was b) are c) were d) is

16. I .... a cake, but I used salt instead of sugar.

a) make b) made c) makes d) making

17. Ali had his swimming test yesterday. He .... 50 meters.

a) swims b) swim c) swimming d) swam

18. They .... too many candies last week.

a) ate b) eating c) eats d) eaten

19. Yesterday, they .... in the park.

a) play b) plays c) playing d) played

20. We all .... a song in the class yesterday.

a) sings b) sang c) singing d) will sing

21. We .... a huge picnic last Friday.

a) has b) had c) have d) having

22. We .... a play last week.

a) see b) saw c) seen d) sees

23. Mum .... me to take a shower because I was covered in mud.

a) tell b) told c) telling d) tells

24. The bird .... up high into the sky.

a) fly b) flying c) flew d) flown

25. ...., we ate Ful Medames.

a) Yesterday b) Now c) Tomorrow d) Next

26. Last week my sister .... an email to Grandma.

a) send b) sent c) sending d) sends

27. When .... you get up yesterday?

a) did b) do c) does d) done

28. What subjects did you .... yesterday?

a) study b) studies c) studied d) studying

29. .... you at home yesterday?

a) Was b) Are c) Were d) Is

30. .... you like your first day of school?

a) Does b) Doing c) Did d) Is

31. Where did you .... last night?

a) go b) goes c) gone d) went

32. Why were .... surprised?

a) he b) she c) it d) they

33. My great-grandma .... 90 years old two years ago.

a) is b) are c) was d) were

34. We didn't .... football yesterday.

a) play b) plays c) playing d) played

35. My sister didn't .... the ball.

a) threw b) thrown c) throws d) throw

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Language

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We .... (be) in the village last summer.
2. There .... (be) no metro in the past.
3. Yesterday, he .... (go) to the park.
4. They .... (study) math last Sunday .
5. Grandpa .... (catch) a fish two days ago.
6. I .... (see) a great movie last night.
7. Sara .... (eat) many sweets. She felt sick.
8. The girls .... (sing) a song in the class yesterday.
9. They didn't .... (swam) in the sea.
10. How did you .... (felt)?
11. Did you .... (helps) your mother?
12. Heba .... (gets) up at seven o'clock yesterday.
13. Ali .... (visit) his uncle last week.
14. Why did the mice .... (had) to run away?
15. Younis .... (live) in Aswan ten years ago.
16. We .... (play) football last Friday.
17. We didn't .... (went) to Damietta.
18. .... (Do) catch fish yesterday?
19. I .... (be) very tired last night.
20. Mona .... (drink) a carton of juice last Monday.

3 Complete the table.

أكمل الجدول

Present	Past	Present	Past
travel	....	celebrate	....
live	....	serve	....
pull	....	....	decorated
....	played	remember	....
....	pushed	study	....



Change into negative.

حول إلى النفي.

1. It was very quiet.

....

2. They were very excited.

....

3. I saw my friends at the party.

....

4. They studied English yesterday.

....

5. He saw a jellyfish last summer.

....

6. Sara felt very sad.

....

7. The day was long.

....

8. I lived in Aswan.

....



Make questions.

كوّن أسئلة.

1. Yes, he was very excited.

....

2. No, they weren't at the park.

....

3. Hany went to the park yesterday. (Where ....?)

....

4. We ate pizza last week. (What ....?)

....

5. I visited Aswan last year. (When ....?)

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Suffix (_ful) اللاحقة

We can make an adjective by adding -ful to the end of a verb or a noun.

يمكننا تكوين الصفة بإضافة المقطع (ful) إلى نهاية الفعل أو الاسم.

Word		Adjective	
care (v) (n)	يهتم / يحرص على / اهتمام	careful	حريص
pain (n)	ألم	painful	مؤلم
beauty (n)	الجمال	beautiful	جميل
help (v)	يساعد	helpful	متعاون
wonder (v)	يتعجب - يتساءل	wonderful	رائع
use (v)	يستخدم	useful	مفيد
color (n/v)	لون / يلون	colorful	زاهي الألوان / ملون

Examples

- I am very careful when I go online.
- I hurt my leg. It's very painful.
- Alia's dress is beautiful. We all love it.
- These tools are very useful for fixing our door.
- That shirt has red, blue and green stripes. It's very colorful.
- Learning about Egypt is wonderful. It has an amazing history.

Help your child revise the suffix "ful".

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع اللاحقة «ful».

General Activities

1 Complete the table. أكمل الجدول.

Word	Adjective
beauty	....
....	helpful
wonder	....
color	....
....	useful
care	....
....	painful

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Adam is very .... He helped me carry the bags.
   a) help b) helpless c) helpful d) helps
2. Be .... when you cross the street.
   a) careful b) beautiful c) painful d) useful
3. Toka's necklace is .... I love it.
   a) helpful b) careful c) beautiful d) painful
4. He hurt his arm. It was very ....
   a) pain b) friendly c) useful d) painful
5. That bird is very ....
   a) care b) color c) colorful d) colors
6. I think computers are ....
   a) use b) using c) useful d) uses

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Language

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I am .... (care) when I go online.
2. Her dress is very .... (beauty).
3. My tooth hurts. It's very .... (pain).
4. The computer is very .... (use).
5. The parrot is .... (color).
6. My grandpa is .... (help).
7. My mother's food is .... (wonder).
8. I'm proud of my brother. He is .... (success).

4 Match the word with the adjective.

صل الكلمة بالصفة.

1) wonder	a) helpful
2) care	b) colorful
3) color	c) wonderful
4) help	d) careful

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

5 Put the word in a sentence.

ضع الكلمة في جملة.

1) careful ⇨ I am careful when I go online.

2) beautiful ⇨ ....

3) painful ⇨ ....

4) useful ⇨ ....

5) colorful ⇨ ....

6) helpful ⇨ ....

7) wonderful ⇨ ....

Modal verbs
الأفعال الناقصة

1 For advice للنصيحة

Subject (فاعل) + should + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

نستخدم (should) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي من المفيد لنا القيام بها.

e.g. I should only give my phone number to my friends.

e.g. You should turn your phone off at night.

Subject (فاعل) + shouldn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

نستخدم (shouldn't) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي ليس من المفيد لنا القيام بها.

e.g. I shouldn't use my phone late at night.

e.g. You shouldn't make new friends online with people you don't know.

2 For necessity للضرورة

Subject (فاعل) + need to + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

نستخدم الفعل (need) لنبين أهمية أو ضرورة عمل شيء ما.

e.g. You need to look left and right when you cross a road.

Subject (فاعل) + need + noun. (اسم)

e.g. You need a helmet on your bike.

3 For obligation للإلزام

نستخدم (must / mustn't) للتعبير عن الإلزام بفعل شيء أو عدم فعله.

Subject (فاعل) + must + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. We must follow road signs.

e.g. We must learn to help others.

Subject (فاعل) + mustn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. You mustn't run on the road.

e.g. You mustn't play with matches.

4 For ability للقدرة

Subject (فاعل) + can + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

نستخدم (can) للتعبير عن القدرة على فعل شيء.

e.g. We can plant more trees to help us breathe better.

e.g. We can ride bikes to help the environment.

Subject (فاعل) + can't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

نستخدم (can't) للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على فعل شيء ما أو عدم السماح بفعل شيء ما.

e.g. You can't swim in the canal.

e.g. You can't paint on the wall.

e.g. You can't ride a bike here.

General Activities

1 Put (should - shouldn't). ضع (should - shouldn't).

1. You .... have a very strong password.
2. You .... only speak to people you know online.
3. You .... speak to strangers on the internet.
4. You .... be a bully online.
5. You .... turn your phone off at night.

2 Look at the signs and put (can - can't).

انظر إلى اللافتات و ضع (can - can't).

You .... swim here.

You .... go straight and turn right.

You .... ride your bike here.

You .... park here.

We .... plant more trees.

3 Choose the correct answer. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I .... talk to someone I don't know online.
   a) must b) should c) shouldn't d) can
2. You .... look left and right before you cross the road.
   a) can't b) shouldn't c) must d) mustn't
3. You .... wear a seat belt in a car.
   a) must b) can't c) shouldn't d) need

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4. I .... have a strong password.
   a) **shouldn't** b) **mustn't** c) **must** d) **can't**
5. You .... use your phone late at night.
   a) **should** b) **shouldn't** c) **must** d) **can**
6. I .... only give my phone number to my friends.
   a) **can't** b) **should** c) **shouldn't** d) **mustn't**
7. You shouldn't .... your friends online.
   a) **bully** b) **bullied** c) **bullies** d) **bullying**
8. I must .... the road signs.
   a) **follow** b) **follows** c) **followed** d) **following**

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I should .... (turns) my phone off at night.
2. I .... (need) look left and right.
3. You can .... (goes) straight and turn right.
4. We must .... (listens) for cars before we cross the road.
5. You .... (shouldn't) have a strong password.
6. You .... (must) smoke in the hospital.
7. You should .... (sleeps) early.
8. We .... (need to) a green light to cross the road.
9. We .... (shouldn't) be careful on roads.
10. We should .... (wore) a seat belt in the car.
11. We .... (shouldn't) follow the road signs.
12. You must .... (crossed) the road at the crosswalk.
13. We can .... (had) many plants on the balcony.
14. You .... (need) take the bus.
15. We .... (must) speak loudly in the library.
16. You should .... (got) enough sleep.

Unit (7) This is where I live

Vocabulary

the Nile	النيل	river	نهر	delighted	مسرور - مبتهج
building	مبنى	village	قرية	excited	متحمس
city	مدينة	curious	شغوف	mouse/mice	فأر - فئران
desert	صحراء	visitors	زائرين	moral	الدرس المستفاد
branches	فروع	nervous	متوتر	bright lights	أضواء ساطعة
forest	غابة	quiet	هادئ	catch a train	يلحق القطار
mountain	جبل	metal box	صندوق معدني	the country	الريف
oasis	واحة	pleased	مسرور	fraction	كسر

Language — The Past Simple Tense

Usage * يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

e.g. We played football on this street.

Form - The second form of the verb. * التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Negative Subject (فاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. We didn't play football on this street.

(Yes / No) question Did + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)...?

e.g. Did you go to the market? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question Q.W + did + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)...?

e.g. When did you get up? e.g. I got up at seven o'clock.

Keywords

yesterday	أمس	ago	منذ
last (week / ...)	(الأسبوع/...) الماضي	in the past	في الماضي

e.g. -I studied English yesterday.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
   a) longest b) shortest c) smallest d) slowest
2. The .... is 6.670 kilometers long.
   a) tower b) Nile c) lake d) sea
3. The Nile is .... for different fish, birds and turtles.
   a) building b) apartment c) home d) garden
4. The Nile .... lives in it.
   a) cow b) donkey c) lion d) crocodile

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I lived in ....
   a) Cairo b) Giza c) Tanta d) Aswan
2. I was very ....
   a) happy b) thirsty c) nervous d) hungry
3. I liked staying at .... with my family.
   a) home b) library c) park d) garden
4. I wanted to play with my ....
   a) dogs b) toys c) friends d) cats

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
   a) longest b) shortest c) longer d) smallest
2. There are a lot of trees in the ....
   a) river b) desert c) forest d) mountain
3. The Nile has two .... in Egypt.
   a) animals b) birds c) fish d) branches

4. I was .... at school. I didn't want to go.
   a) **hungry** b) **nervous** c) **hot** d) **cold**
5. $\frac{2}{4}$ is .... $\frac{4}{8}$.
   a) **bigger than** b) **less than** c) **the same as** d) **smaller than**
6. Cairo is the .... of Egypt.
   a) **capital** b) **town** c) **moon** d) **forest**
7. There are a lot of high .... in my city.
   a) **deserts** b) **buildings** c) **rivers** d) **seas**
8. I carry my .... to school.
   a) **toy** b) **backpack** c) **bed** d) **desk**
9. I live in a .... There are tall buildings.
   a) **village** b) **town** c) **city** d) **desert**
10. The .... lives in the Nile.
   a) **whale** b) **bear** c) **monkey** d) **crocodile**
11. Our school has a big metal .... at the front.
   a) **book** b) **desk** c) **chair** d) **gate**
12. The city is full of .... lights.
   a) **dark** b) **pale** c) **bright** d) **low**
13. I was .... to read city mouse and country mouse story. It was funny.
   a) **scared** b) **bored** c) **pleased** d) **angry**
14. We can .... a train at eight to the city.
   a) **make** b) **go** c) **play** d) **catch**
15. Cars that use electricity are much ....
   a) **quieter** b) **noisier** c) **louder** d) **hotter**
16. I .... my box of memories here.
   a) **walked** b) **buried** c) **visited** d) **talked**

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

street - cars - old - plant - quiet

My father's house was in a village in Aswan. The street was 1) .... in the past. Now there are lots of 2) .... and trucks. My father and his friends played football on this 3) .... Now there isn't enough space. When my father was a child, he helped his friend to 4) .... a small tree on the side of the street.

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

branches - crocodile - Earth - lion - longest

The Nile brings the life to the whole Egypt. It's the 1) .... river in the world. It's about 6.670 kilometers long. It's like travelling to the center of the 2) .... It has two 3) .... in Egypt. The Nile 4) .... lives in it.

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

weren't - near - next - moved - quiet

Last year I visited my Grandpa's village. It was a 1) .... and beautiful place. There were lots of trees, but there 2) .... any trains. Grandpa's parents 3) .... to this village when he was three. He played football 4) .... his home.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I remember my first day of school. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school. At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom. The teacher was very kind. We studied math and played games; it was fun!

A) Choose the correct word.

1) I carried my .... to school.

a) books b) backpack c) box d) shoes

2) The teacher was very ....

a) quiet b) kind c) sad d) happy

B) Answer the following questions.

3) How did you go to school? ....

4) Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

- Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse was pleased. He gave his friend grass and seeds. The city mouse said, 'Thank you. You know, the city is pretty and full of bright lights, why don't you come and see?' The country mouse was delighted and very excited. The city mouse stopped eating and said, 'There's no reason to wait. We can catch a train at eight.'

A) Choose the correct word.

1) The underlined word "delighted" means ....

a) unhappy b) sad c) pleased d) depressed

2) The country mouse gave his friend .... and seeds.

a) leaves b) grass c) roots d) flowers

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Where did the country mouse live? ....

4) When can they catch a train? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. How did you .... (felt) at school?
2. I .... (move) to this village when I was five.
3. I didn't .... (wants) to go to school.
4. What .... (do) Ali wear last Sunday?
5. Mom .... (walks) to work yesterday.
6. We .... (study) math two hours ago.
7. I .... (be) eight years old when I buried the box of memories.
8. .... (Do) you go to school yesterday?
9. When did you .... (got) up?
10. Last weekend I .... (visit) my uncle.

6 Punctuate the following sentences.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1) the Nile is very long

....

2) we are proud of our country Egypt

....



7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Your town then and now

Guiding words: (buildings - cars - shopping)

Your first day of school

Guiding words: (remember - six - put on)

Unit (8) We had fun

Quantifiers محددات الكمية

a carton of juice	علبة من العصير	a bar of soap	قطعة صابون
a packet of cookies	عبوة بسكويت	a bottle of water	زجاجة ماء
a slice of meat	شريحة لحم	a slice of cake	قطعة كيك
a piece of cheese	قطعة من الجبن	a carton of milk	عبوة حليب
a bar of chocolate	قالب شيكولاتة	a piece of bread	قطعة خبز

Others

Shawwal	شهر شوال	fast	يصوم	poem	قصيدة
kahk	كعك	grandma	جدة	Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر
mosque	مسجد	friendly	ودود	surprised	مندهش
celebration	احتفال	picnic	نزهة / وجبة	decorate	يُزين

Social Studies



Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival.



Kahk are delicious cookies.



All Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim.



During Sham El-Nessim, people eat fesikh and colored eggs.

Help your child revise unit (8).

ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع الوحدة الثامنة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I have .... with my family every day.
   a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) snacks
2. I like to have a .... of cookies.
   a) slice b) packet c) bar d) bottle
3. My father likes to have a slice of ....
   a) cookies b) meat c) cake d) cheese
4. My sister likes to have a .... of chocolate.
   a) piece b) bottle c) packet d) bar

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I went to the .... last night.
   a) zoo b) park c) cinema d) school
2. We went in a ....
   a) taxi b) bus c) car d) train
3. We .... a great movie.
   a) played b) acted c) had d) saw
4. We went to a good ....
   a) park b) restaurant c) café d) garden

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Eid Al-Fitr comes after ....
   a) spring b) winter c) Ramadan d) Shawwal
2. Muslims .... during the day in Ramadan.
   a) eat b) swim c) fast d) drink
3. She drank a .... of water.
   a) piece b) bar c) bottle d) tank

4. We color .... in Sham El-Nessim.
   a) eggs b) kahk c) meat d) sweets
5. I have a .... of milk.
   a) packet b) bottle c) slice d) bar
6. Kahk are delicious ....
   a) meat b) cookies c) sugar d) tea
7. People eat delicious food and .... at Eid Al-Fitr.
   a) sleep b) celebrate c) cook d) drink
8. We had a .... with our families.
   a) picnic b) lesson c) job d) work
9. My dad gave me a .... on my birthday.
   a) chair b) present c) player d) winner
10. This food isn't good. It tastes ....
   a) good b) delicious c) sad d) horrible
11. I want a .... of chocolate.
   a) bar b) carton c) bottle d) glass
12. To .... is not to eat or drink.
   a) sleep b) run c) fast d) play
13. We stayed in a hotel .... the sea.
   a) of b) in c) with d) by
14. Muslims fast .... the day in Ramadan.
   a) after b) before c) at d) during
15. Heba bought kahk from a ....
   a) bakery b) zoo c) school d) park
16. My ....-grandma is my grandma's mother.
   a) small b) little c) great d) short

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

great - sunset - Ramadan - fast - Shawwal

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called 1) .... Muslims 2) .... during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until 3) .... Ramadan is a time to help other people. It's a 4) .... month.

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

sang - swam - play - remember - caught

Last year, we went to the beach. We 1) .... in the water, which was deep and blue. We 2) .... a song. My grandpa 3) .... lots of fish. We felt happy. It was a day to 4) .... We will go again soon.

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

bottle - a slice - chocolate - bar - cookies

I had fun at the party. I drank some juice. I only had 1) .... of cake. I ate a packet of 2) .... and a piece of cheese. I ate a bar of 3) .... After that, I was thirsty so I had a 4) .... of water.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

In many countries, people celebrate Christmas. It is a special festival. People meet together to celebrate. People decorate Christmas trees at Christmas. These trees are always green. The trees represent new life. People decorate the trees with lights, colored balls, and stars.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) The Christmas trees are always ....

a) red b) yellow c) green d) pink

2) People decorate the trees with colored ....

a) dolls b) eggs c) kites d) balls

B) Answer the following questions.

3) What is the main idea of the text? ....

4) Why do people meet together? ....

- Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water. It was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish and an octopus, too! Grandpa caught a fish. We ate it and had a healthy dessert. We saw some old photos and sang a song. We felt happy. It was a day to remember. We like to go there again.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) Last weekend we went to ....

a) Giza b) Damietta c) Cairo d) Luxor

2) The underlined word "by" means ....

a) next to b) under c) up d) in

B) Answer the following questions.

3) How was the water? ....

4) What did Grandpa catch? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. They .... (eat) pizza yesterday.
2. My father .... (catch) a lot of fish last Friday.
3. Last night we .... (see) old videos.
4. What did you .... (bought)?
5. I .... (drink) a bottle of juice yesterday.
6. Last year I .... (swim) in the river.
7. My father .... (catch) a train to Aswan two days ago.
8. I went to the beach last year. It .... (be) fun!
9. I .... (go) to bed at 8 o'clock last night.
10. I didn't .... (sang) a song in class today.

6 Punctuate the following sentences.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية

1) muslims fast during Ramadan

....

2) we eat kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Ramadan

Guiding words:

(before Eid - fast - don't eat)

A day to remember

Guiding words:

(grandpa's farm - fields - animals)

Unit (9) What makes us special

Party games ألعاب جماعية

musical chairs	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية	pass the parcel	لعبة تمرير الطرد
hide and seek	لعبة الاستغماية «الغميضة»	rope pulling	لعبة شد الحبل

Unusual festivals احتفالات غير عادية

Cheese rolling	مهرجان دحرجة الجبن	La Tomatina	مهرجان التراشق بالطماطم
Kite festival	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية	Chinese New Year	رأس السنة الصينية

Egyptian food الطعام المصري

Ful Medames (beans)	فول مدمس	garlic	ثوم	olive oil	زيت الزيتون
basbousa	بسبوسة	syrup	شربات	semolina	سَميد

Others كلمات أخرى

present	هدية	seeker	الباحث
traditional	تقليدي	proud of	فخور بـ
hospitable	مضياف/كريم	special	خاص / مميز
famous for	مشهور بـ	region	منطقة
wrap	يغلّف	unwrap	يفتح
winner	فائز	invitation	دعوة
player	لاعب	birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد
national	قومي	guest	ضيف
history	تاريخ	address	عنوان

Help your child revise unit (9).

ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع الوحدة التاسعة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. In .... we make a lot of movies.
   a) Egypt b) China c) France d) USA
2. We have .... who won important prizes.
   a) teachers b) authors c) doctors d) pilots
3. We love .... in Egypt.
   a) clothes b) food c) sports d) drinks
4. Ferial Abdeaziz a famous .... player.
   a) football b) handball c) volleyball d) karate

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We all love to give ....
   a) gifts b) prizes c) presents d) money
2. We .... presents.
   a) wrap b) [illegible]t c) send d) throw
3. In this game p[illegible] sit in a ....
   a) square b) circle c) rectangle d) triangle
4. The player who unwraps the present .... it.
   a) breaks b) buys c) throws d) keeps

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Ali won the game. He is the ....
   a) winner b) loser c) player d) actor
2. Ful Medames is a famous Egyptian ....
   a) sport b) food c) color d) game
3. Egyptians are very ....
   a) unkind b) helpless c) hospitable d) unfriendly

4. Egypt is famous .... its history.
   a) for b) in c) on d) at
5. Basbousa is very .... with syrup.
   a) sour b) spicy c) salty d) sweet
6. Alia's dress is .... We all love it.
   a) helpful b) beautiful c) careful d) painful
7. Those tools are very .... for fixing our door.
   a) painful b) beautiful c) careful d) useful
8. Learning about Egypt is .... It has an amazing history.
   a) painful b) careful c) wonderful d) colorful
9. We should be .... of our beautiful country.
   a) angry b) sad c) proud d) short
10. Everything was red in the .... Festival.
   a) Kite b) Chinese c) La Tomatina d) Cheese
11. When we .... a present, we cover it with lots of paper.
   a) open b) wrap c) unwrap d) listen
12. I like to fly ....
   a) balls b) kites c) dolls d) tomatoes
13. Many .... come to visit Egypt every year.
   a) trucks b) roads c) visitors d) planes
14. People who write movies and stories are called ....
   a) teachers b) doctors c) players d) authors
15. I hurt my leg. It's very .... !
   a) careful b) beautiful c) painful d) useful
16. About 90% of Egypt is ....
   a) rivers b) desert c) forests d) ice

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

garlic - fish - wonderful - served - Ful

Our food can be described with one word: 1) .... ! The most famous food is 2) .... Medames, beans cooked very slowly, 3) .... with lots of olive oil and 4) ....

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

in - five - out - chairs - music

How to start to play musical chairs. Put out some 1) .... If you have 6 players, you only need 2) .... chairs. You can play some 3) .... When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without the chair is 4) ....

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

Cheese - falling - kites - potatoes - tomatoes

There are many festivals around the world. The Kite festival is to fly different shapes of 1) .... In 2) .... rolling festival, they start running and 3) .... In La Tomatina festival, people throw 4) .... at each other. Everything is red.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Egypt is a country which is famous for its history. We have wonderful foods like Ful Medames and Basbousa. We have authors who won important prizes. We also have famous karate players like Ferial Abdelaziz.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) The word "famous" means ....

a) sad b) well known c) unkind d) unhappy

2) .... won important prizes.

a) Authors b) Students c) Chefs d) Teachers

B) Answer the following questions.

3) What is Egypt famous for? ....

4) Who is a famous karate player? ....

- Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

When we get together with our family and friends to celebrate something, the children often play games. Musical chairs is an interesting game. You can run but be ready to sit! If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs. After that, play some music. The players run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without a chair is out. Take away one chair and play again.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) The player without a chair is the ....

a) first b) second c) winner d) loser

2) In the musical chairs game, the chairs should be .... than players.

a) more b) most c) fewer d) little

B) Answer the following questions.

3) How many chairs do you need for 7 players in the musical chairs?

4) What is the general idea of the text? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Sara's necklace is .... (beauty).
2. Adam is very .... (help). He helpec me carry the bags.
3. Be .... (care) when you cross the street.
4. Her dress has red, blue and green stripes. It's very........ (color).
5. I hurt my finger. It's very .... (pain).
6. Mona .... (wears) a rice dress last night.
7. My father .... (give) me a present last month.
8. I .... (don't) go to school yesterday.
9. Hend .... (win) the race in 2015.
10. I .... (fly) my kite last weekend.

6 Punctuate the following sentences.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1) sara's necklace is beautiful

....

2) adam is very helpful

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Playing games

Guiding words:

(have fun - friends - respect ru es)

Your birthday party

Guiding words:

(3rd May - house - cake)

Unit (10) I enjoy my life

Social Media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

cell phone	هاتف محمول	tablet	تابلت
password	كلمة مرور	message	رسالة / يوصل رسالة
copy	ينسخ	chat	يدردش
presentation	عرض تقديمي	chameleon	حرباء
log in / into	يسجل دخول	bully	يتنمر / التنمر
contact	يتصل	have fun	يمرح
online	على الإنترنت	opinion	رأي
tag	يشير إلى / إشارة	neighbours	جيران
unhealthy	غير صحي	unhappy	غير سعيد
pros	مزايا	good for	مفيد لـ
cons	عيوب	bad for	ضار لـ

(✓) Pros of social media

- You can have fun.
- You can find information for your research / homework.
- You can learn interesting things.

(×) Cons of social media

- Some people can bully you.
- People you don't know can contact you.
- People can take your personal information.

Language Giving advice:

Subject (الفاعل) **+ should** (ينبغي أن) **+ inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

تستخدم (should) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي من المفيد لنا القيام بها.

- I should only give my phone number to my friends.

Subject (الفاعل) **+ shouldn't** (لا ينبغي أن) **+ inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

تستخدم (shouldn't) عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي من غير المفيد لنا القيام بها.

- We shouldn't sleep late.

Help your child revise unit (10).

ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع الوحدة العاشرة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Many people say that computer games are .... for children.
   a) good b) bad c) healthy d) useful
2. Children can spend many hours on their ....
   a) books b) stories c) computers d) cellphones
3. Children look at the .... of computers.
   a) keyboard b) screen c) mouse d) hard
4. Good children go ....
   a) inside b) indoors c) outside d) into homes

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Noha researched for her .... on her tablet.
   a) homework b) project c) test d) presentation
2. Noha logged .... some websites.
   a) with b) at c) by d) into
3. She wanted to choose a .... for her bedroom.
   a) bed b) desk c) color d) carpet
4. Noha was ....
   a) sad b) happy c) nervous d) angry

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... are interesting animals. They can change their color
   a) Chameleons b) Cows c) Camels d) Pandas
2. Remember to be .... Don't copy information
   a) delicious b) respectful c) interesting d) amazing
3. I don't want anyone to know about it. It's a ....
   a) secret b) season c) class d) safe

4. They logged into the library .... to get information.
   a) phone b) number c) website d) class
5. We use social media to .... ideas.
   a) chat b) share c) sure d) eat
6. Using modern devices has .... and cons.
   a) cans b) pros c) online d) coins
7. I should use .... passwords.
   a) tall b) bad c) strong d) weak
8. It's .... to play computer games for a long time.
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) perfect
9. I use .... media when I go online.
   a) book b) history c) social d) local
10. I can .... my friend in photos online.
   a) talk b) tag c) play d) match
11. I need to look at lots of .... and find some information.
   a) air b) friends c) websites d) clouds
12. I sent a .... to my friend to help me.
   a) message b) school c) color d) hospital
13. Some people can .... you online.
   a) take b) pull c) bully d) push
14. The story is .... I don't like it.
   a) interesting b) amazing c) boring d) fun
15. Chameleons can change their ....
   a) color b) clothes c) shoes d) tails
16. I should turn my phone .... at night
   a) on b) off c) at d) in

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. You should .... (being) safe online.
2. You shouldn't .... (spoke) to strangers on the internet.
3. You should .... (has) a strong password.
4. You .... (shouldn't) speak to people you know.
5. You should .... (turns) your phone off at night.
6. You can .... (shares) photos on social media.
7. You .... (should) give your password to everyone.
8. I lost my shoes. I'm .... (happy).
9. Eating too much candy is .... (healthy).
10. I think you should .... (ate) healthy food.

6 Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1) we check our cell phones every day

....

2) do you like computer games

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Computer games

Guiding words:

(interesting - tablet - unhealthy)

Staying safe online

Guiding words:

(contact - personal - password)

Unit (11) What can we do?

Vocabulary

metro	مترو	transportation	وسائل المواصلات	shocked	مصدوم
bus	أتوبيس/حافلة	ambulance	عربة إسعاف	fell over	سقط
plane	طائرة	rail	سكة حديد	left	يسار
boat	قارب	in a hurry	في عجلة من أمره/ متعجل	right	يمين
train	قطار	chemicals	مواد كيميائية	by bus	بالأتوبيس
taxi	تاكسي	on foot	سيرا على الأقدام	through air	عبر الجو

Phonics



Language

- You need a seat belt in your car.
- You need to look left and right.



You can go straight and turn right.



You can't swim here.



You must wait for the green light.

Help your child revise unit (11).

ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع الوحدة الحادية عشرة

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Cities have many ....
   a) plants b) cars c) planes d) trains
2. Cars make .... pollution.
   a) water b) land c) air d) soil
3. We can't always see the .... , but they are dangerous.
   a) chemicals b) cars c) trains d) ships
4. Air pollution is very .... to us.
   a) important b) healthy c) useful d) dangerous

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My favorite transportation is a ....
   a) train b) car c) ship d) bus
2. I love traveling on ....
   a) water b) road c) air d) space
3. I enjoy watching the ....
   a) gardens b) plants c) fish d) sea
4. All my .... like traveling by ship.
   a) family b) friends c) neighbors d) team

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My brother comes to school .... car.
   a) by b) on c) at d) in
2. We go to the airport to travel by ....
   a) train b) car c) boat d) plane
3. Stop here and wait for a .... light.
   a) green b) pink c) red d) yellow

4. A train moves on a ....
   a) air b) road c) rail d) water
5. Road signs give you .... information about the road.
   a) unnecessary b) important c) weak d) unimportant
6. The .... travels through the air.
   a) ship b) metro c) taxi d) plane
7. Cars make air pollution. They put .... into the air.
   a) metals b) woods c) stars d) chemicals
8. When I travel by plane, I go through the ....
   a) air b) road c) water d) land
9. My dad has a .... in his car to drive safely.
   a) chair b) helmet c) seat belt d) bike
10. A boat moves on ....
   a) road b) rail c) sky d) water
11. I love traveling by air. My favorite transportation is ....
   a) car b) plane c) ship d) bus
12. You need to look left and .... before you cross the road.
   a) right b) good c) green d) black
13. You need a green light to .... the road.
   a) play b) cross c) send d) visit
14. When Ali hurt his foot, Ahmed called for an ....
   a) motorbike b) bus c) plane d) ambulance
15. When we .... the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.
   a) drink b) breathe c) hear d) eat
16. Ali was late, so he was .... a hurry.
   a) on b) in c) by d) at

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

right - light - cap - helmet - seat belt

We need many important things to be safe on the road. We need a 1) .... on our bikes. We need a 2) .... in our cars. We need a green 3) .... to cross the road. We also need to look left and 4) ....

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

road - rail - ship - plane - water

I love traveling very much. When I travel by 1) .... I go through the air. When I travel by 2) .... and boat, I am on the 3) .... When I travel to Luxor from Cairo by train, I move on a 4) ....

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

share - bike - chemicals - sick - walk

Air pollution is very dangerous for us. We can get sick because of the 1) .... in the air. We can 2) .... cars with other people. We can go to school by 3) .... We can 4) .... to school, too.



4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Many countries try to stop air pollution in their cities. Cars make air pollution. In London, England, parents don't drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near schools. In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) In ...., parents do not drive children to school.
a) China b) England c) Egypt d) America

2) Cars make .... pollution
a) air b) water c) land d) sight

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Which transportation make air pollution? ....

4) Mention two solutions to reduce air pollution. ....

- Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Last week I heard Dr Helen Walker talking about air pollution. I liked her ideas and I did some research. I talked to my family about what we can do. We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I now go to school by bike. My sister, Noura, walks to school because her school is nearer.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) I talked to my .... about what we can do.
a) teachers b) family c) friends d) sisters

2) I now go to school by ....
a) car b) train c) bike d) plane

B) Answer the following questions.

3) What was Dr Helen talking about? ....

4) Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

Help your child deal with such questions.



5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. You .... (need to) a seat belt in your car.
2. I need to .... (bought) a present for my mother.
3. You need .... (in) get some information for your homework.
4. We .... (need to) safe roads.
5. You .... (need) look left and right.
6. You must .... (waited) for the green light before crossing the road.
7. You must .... (followed) road signs.
8. We .... (mustn't) wear seat belt in the car.
9. You mustn't .... (ran) on the road.
10. You must .... (wore) a helmet on the bike.

6 Punctuate the following sentences.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية

1) why is Seleem meeting people

....

2) what did Hany do yesterday

....



7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

A story you read

Guiding words:

(walk - school - crosswalk)

Road safety

Guiding words:

(listen for cars - crosswalk - seat belt)

English language performance tasks

المهام الأدائية

A traditional dish

Egypt is famous for many wonderful traditional dishes like (Ful Medames - Basbousa).

⇨ **Write about:**

The traditional dish you like most.

⇨ **Draw you traditional dish.**

....

....

....

....

A trip with your friends

It's end of year holiday. You want to do many activities. Some of your friends want to go to the beach. Some want to go to the museum. Some want to go to the zoo.

⇨ **Write about:**

The activity you want to do during the trip.

⇨ **Draw what you can see/ do in these places.**

....

....

....

....

Help your child do these performance tasks.

ساعد طفلك أن يقوم بالمهام الأدائية.



★ Festivals

You are celebrating one of the festivals with your family and friends.

⇨ **Write about:**

- What do you do during it?
- How do you celebrate it?
- What do you eat during it?

⇨ **Draw a symbol for your favorite festival.**

....

....

....

....

★ Invitation

You want to invite your friends to your birthday party.

⇨ **Write an invitation including:**

(address - time and place - why to invite - what to wear - what to bring).

⇨ **Draw the invitation cover.**

....

....

....

....

★ A leaflet

You want to help your friends know how to be safe online. You make a leaflet about "How to stay safe online".

⇨ **Write about:**

- What should you do online to be safe?
- What shouldn't you do?
- Give advice to your friends.

⇨ **Draw the leaflet you will share with your friends.**

....

....

....

....

★ Mother's Day

It's "Mother's Day". You want to make a present for your mom. You have some old things at home that you can recycle.

⇨ **Write about:**

- What things will you use?
- What will you do? (The steps).
- What is the product?

⇨ **Draw a picture of the present you make.**

....

....

....

....

Help your child do these performance tasks.

ساعد طفلك أن يقوم بالمهام الأدائية.

Exam (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Last week we went to ....
   a) Aswan b) Giza c) Cairo d) Damietta
2. Grandma and grandpa live by the ....
   a) sea b) village c) tower d) pyramids
3. We saw a lots of ....
   a) cats b) fish c) birds d) plants
4. Grandpa .... a fish.
   a) bought b) ate c) caught d) made

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I bought a .... of water from the shop yesterday.
   a) bottle b) packet c) slice d) bar
2. We should be .... of our beautiful country.
   a) pain b) proud c) care d) cloud

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Nile - green - dessert - region - desert

Many people think that Egypt is only a 1) .... It's true but we also have 2) .... lands. Near the 3) ...., it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in Sinai 4) ....

4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

I'm Ahmed. I live in a big city in Egypt with my family. The city is always noisy and crowded. It has a lot of pretty, bright lights but smoke and noise are everywhere. In summer, we visit our grandpa in the country. It is always quiet and clean. There are a lot of trees and grass. Life is slow. We love the country rather than the city.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Ahmed visits grandpa in the ....
   a) spring b) winter c) summer d) fall
2. The city is always ....
   a) slow b) quiet c) noisy d) bad

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How is life in the country? ....
4. What does Ahmed like more, the city or the country? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Yesterday I didn't .... (walked) to school.
2. I .... (shouldn't) keep my password secret.
3. When you go online, you need to be .... (care).
4. How .... (do) you go to the library yesterday?

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

what was on the table

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

A festival we celebrate in Egypt

Guiding elements:
(Name of the festival - When is it? - What do people do, eat and wear?)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (2)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... is very important.
   - a) Nile b) farm c) station d) airport
2. The Nile brings life to ....
   - a) France b) China c) Egypt d) India
3. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
   - a) shortest b) longest c) fastest d) tallest
4. The Nile has .... branches.
   - a) one b) two c) three d) four

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can .... photos online.
   - a) say b) share c) write d) cook
2. We travel on .... by ship or boat.
   - a) water b) rail c) road d) street

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

store - gas - shopping - water - electricity

Our city has a shopping area, but I don't like 1) .... Dad worked in a shoe 2) .... We drove 3) .... cars in the past but now we have a car that uses 4) ....

4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I was very nervous. I didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants and black shoes. Mom and I walked to school. I studied math and played games; it was fun.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. In his first day of school, he was .... years old.
   a) six b) seven c) eight d) five
2. He walked to school with his ....
   a) brother b) dad c) mom d) sister

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What clothes did he put on? ....
4. What subject did he study? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. There .... (was) no cars in the past.
2. You need to .... (looking) left and right.
3. What games did you .... (played) yesterday?
4. You should .... (sleeping) early.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

i don't go to school on Friday

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Your day

Guiding words:

(get up - home - play games)

....

....

....

....

Exam (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The month before Eid is called ....

a) Ramadan b) Shawwal c) March d) October

2. Muslims .... during the day in Ramadan.

a) drink b) fast c) eat d) sleep

3. "Fast" means not to eat or .... until sunset.

a) make b) run c) sleep d) drink

4. In Ramadan, people think about the .... year.

a) next b) following c) past d) present

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Chameleons are the same color as the .... where they are.

a) place b) air c) kind d) world

2. I .... into the library website to get information.

a) created b) logged c) changed d) wrote

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

wonderful - visitors - hospitable - bad - energy

More than half of Egyptians are under the age of 30. Egyptians are full of 1) .... .They are helpful to each other. They are very friendly to 2) .... and guests. They are very 3) .... people. Egyptian people are very 4) ....



Read the following text then answer the questions.

Our world has a big problem because of the air pollution. Experts talk about ideas to stop this problem. People must help experts to solve this problem. For example, we should plant more trees. We can have energy-saving light bulbs in our apartments and use public transportation.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. We should use .... transportation.
   a) **more** b) **less** c) **public** d) **crowded**
2. Experts talk about ideas to .... pollution.
   a) **help** b) **plant** c) **see** d) **stop**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What problem does the world have? ....
4. How can people help the experts? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You should .... (cleans) your room.
2. We .... (study) English yesterday.
3. I didn't .... (wanted) to go back to school.
4. You can't .... (swam) here.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

which is your favorite transportation

....



Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

The Nile

Guiding words:

(the longest - two branches)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (4)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Grandpa's village was very ....
   a) quiet   b) noisy   c) crowded   d) dirty
2. There were no .... in the past.
   a) trains   b) cars   c) buses   d) planes
3. Grandpa was .... when he buried the box of memories.
   a) ten   b) nine   c) eight   d) six
4. Now, my grandpa is very ....
   a) fast   b) strong   c) young   d) old

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mona was very tired, she looked a bit ....
   a) green   b) black   c) white   d) pink
2. Tamer drank a .... of milk yesterday.
   a) bottle   b) bar   c) piece   d) slice

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

fish - sea - ate - sang - drank

Last week, we went to visit my grandpa. He lives by the 1) .... We went by car. We swam and made castles. We saw lots of 2) .... We 3) .... lots of songs. We 4) .... ice cream. We were very happy.



4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Our Egyptian food can be described with one word: wonderful! The most famous food is Ful Medames, beans cooked very slowly, served with lots of olive oil and garlic. When you want something sweet, you should try basbousa, a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup. Egyptian people are very hospitable.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Ful Medames is .... with olive oil and garlic.
   a) **drunk** b) **served** c) **played** d) **celebrated**
2. The underlined word "wonderful" means very ....
   a) **ugly** b) **bad** c) **good** d) **cold**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can you eat when you want something sweet?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My mother .... (make) a delicious cake yesterday.
2. I didn't .... (did) my homework yesterday.
3. There .... (is) a shopping area in my village last year.
4. We .... (need to) a helmet on our bikes.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

mona had ice cream for dessert

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Air pollution

Guiding words:

(air pollution - walk - cycle - solar power)

Exam (5)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Eid Al-Fitr is a muslim ....
   a) festival b) holiday c) month d) party
2. It happens in the .... day of Shawwal.
   a) first b) second c) third d) fifth
3. Many people make .... to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr.
   a) fish b) kahk c) egg d) chicken
4. People go to the mosque and .... time with their families.
   a) play b) stay c) spend d) take

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I want to .... my cousin and chat with him.
   a) read b) speak c) talk d) message
2. I wear the .... on my head when I ride my bike.
   a) toy b) watch c) clothes d) helmet

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

road - look - blue - green - need

It's important to be safe on the road. You 1) .... a helmet on your bike. You need a 2) .... light to cross the road. You need to 3) .... left and right before you cross the 4) ....



4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

There are different festivals around the world. In China, the New Year festival is the most important. It starts on 1st February and ends on 11th. La Tomatina is the strangest festival in Spain. People fight each other with tomatoes. Everything is red. They play and laugh. They wear old clothes. In Egypt, we have Sham El-Nessim which is a very special festival for Egyptian people in the beginning of spring.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Sham El-Nessim is celebrated in ....
   a) **Spain** b) **China** c) **Egypt** d) **India**
2. .... is the most important festival in China.
   a) **Eid Al-Fitr** b) **The New Year**
   c) **Sham El-Nessim** d) **La Tomatina**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do people do in 'La Tomatina'? ....
4. When does the New Year festival start? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. What .... (do) you do yesterday?
2. Osama .... (walk) to school last Monday.
3. We must .... (followed) road signs.
4. You should .... (ate) healthy food.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

i love travelling on water

....



7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Great-grandma's birthday party

Guiding words:

(great-grandma - seventy - picnic - games - cousins - songs)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Exam (6)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Many people say that computer .... are bad for children.
   a) games b) movies c) plays d) tools
2. .... can spend many hours on their computers and tablets.
   a) Babies b) Parents c) Children d) Friends
3. Parents say this is not .... for their children.
   a) kind b) healthy c) bad d) friendly
4. Parents are ....
   a) happy b) excited c) sad d) bad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We are .... of our beautiful country.
   a) hard b) good c) proud d) bad
2. That shirt has red, blue and green stripes. It's very ....
   a) colorful b) helpful c) useful d) painful

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

played - space - nice - street - plant

My father's house was in a village in Aswan. The 1) .... was quiet in the past. Now there are lots of cars and trucks. My father and his friends 2) .... football on this street. Now there isn't enough 3) .... When my father was a child, he helped his friends to 4) .... a small tree on the side of the street. Now the tree is very big and beautiful. It's very nice.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Ahmed. I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I wore my black shoes and blue pants. I carried my backpack. I was very nervous. I want to play with toys. I didn't want to go to school.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Ahmed wore .... shoes.
   a) brown b) red c) black d) blue
2. Ahmed was ....
   a) happy b) nervous c) sad d) excited

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How old was Ahmed when he went to school? ....
4. Did Ahmed want to go to school? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You must .... (followed) road signs.
2. Yesterday, we .... (eat) a chocolate cake.
3. Ahmed is ill. He needs to .... (went) to hospital.
4. You should .... (saw) the doctor.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

i can t go to bed at 9 o'clock.

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

You want to invite your friends to your birthday party

Guiding words:

(music - my house - invitation - next Monday)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (7)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My great-grandma was .... years old.
   a) 60 b) 70 c) 80 d) 90
2. All my family .... together to celebrate.
   a) sang b) came c) ran d) swam
3. The family ate .... , meat, fish, and fruit.
   a) beans b) kahk c) eggs d) salad
4. The family had .... cake, too.
   a) muffin b) ful c) chocolate d) noodles

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We're having a spring .... at the school.
   a) festival b) Eid c) fast d) class
2. There are lots of trees in the ....
   a) desert b) river c) building d) forest

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

desert - river - cold - water - hot

Egypt is a beautiful country. It has a long 1) .... We can get fresh 2) .... from it. Egypt also has a big 3) .... The desert climate is very 4) ....



Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Nile river is very important in Egypt. It's the longest river in the world. It's about 6,675 kilometers long. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. The Nile is the home for different kinds of animals. We should keep the Nile clean. The Nile brings us fresh water. Without the Nile there is no life. We all need the Nile to live.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
   a) **longest** b) **tallest** c) **shortest** d) **long**
2. There are .... branches of the Nile in Egypt.
   a) **one** b) **three** c) **two** d) **four**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How long is the Nile? ....
4. What's the Nile home for? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They .... (are) in the zoo yesterday.
2. Rehab .... (swim) in the sea last weekend.
3. Our food is .... (wonder) in Egypt.
4. We should .... (is) proud of our country.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

my sisters have yellow hats

....



Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Sham El-Nessim

Guiding words:

(celebrate - eggs - parks)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Grandma's mom and dad drove gas ....
   a) cars b) buses c) planes d) ships
2. Gas cars were ....
   a) quiet b) noisy c) healthy d) cleaner
3. Now we have .... cars.
   a) gas b) plastic c) electric d) metal
4. Electric cars are much .... and quieter.
   a) slower b) longer c) shorter d) cleaner

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I use my .... to do my homework online.
   a) tablet b) book c) pen d) notebook
2. My sister went to the .... to take the plane to London.
   a) station b) airport c) room d) school

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

special - spring - salted - winter - families

Sham El-Nessim is celebrated by Egyptians. It's a festival that celebrates the start of 1) .... We eat green onions and 2) .... fish during Sham El-Nessim. We color boiled eggs. We go to the parks with our 3) .... to have picnics. We play in the park. Sham El-Nessim is a very 4) .... day.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Cell phones help us with our lives. A cell phone is a kind of telephones. It's a very useful device for us. They are of different colors. Through the cell phone, we get and send news, play games and communicate. Pupils can do their homework. They can do researches and find information about different animals.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about ....
   a) **tablets** b) **cell phones** c) **computers** d) **pens**
2. The word "useful" means ....
   a) **good** b) **bad** c) **angry** d) **sad**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can we do through the cell phone? ....
4. Who can use cell phones to do the homework? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We played and .... (swim) in the sea last year.
2. We should .... (turns) our phones off at night.
3. My mother .... (make) a delicious cake yesterday.
4. You need to .... (wore) a helmet when you ride a bike.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

egypt is famous for its history

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

The River Nile

Guiding words:

(the longest river - home for)

....

....

Exam (9)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Two years ago, we had a very special ....
   a) party   b) festival   c) ceremony   d) holiday
2. My great-grandma was .... years old.
   a) 70   b) 80   c) 90   d) 99
3. All my family came together to ....
   a) work   b) study   c) celebrate   d) play
4. The family .... chocolate cake.
   a) drank   b) gave   c) spent   d) had

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Young Egyptian people are full of ....
   a) energy   b) smoke   c) cold   d) plants
2. If you are not .... on road, you will have an accident.
   a) useful   b) careful   c) colorful   d) wonderful

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

shoe - crowded - noisy - quiet - shopping

Grandpa says that his mom and dad drove gas cars. They were very 1) .... Our town had a 2) .... area, but it was very old. My dad worked in a 3) .... store on Saturdays. Our town is different now. It is more modern but more 4) ....

4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. It's Egypt's oldest festival as ancient Egyptians celebrated it too. Sham El-Nessim is in April. It comes the day after Coptic Easter. At Sham El-Nessim, the weather is usually nice, so we go to the park and eat lots of nice food. We also color eggs.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. People color .... during the festival of Sham El-Nessim.
   a) potatoes b) onions c) eggs d) fish
2. I celebrate Sham El-Nessim with my ....
   a) friends b) family c) teachers d) aunts

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When is Sham El-Nessim? ....
4. What is the weather like at Sham El-Nessim? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We .... (go) to the beach yesterday.
2. We should .... (turned) our phones off at night.
3. I .... (buy) a new dress last week.
4. I need to .... (looks) at many websites to find a lot of information for my homework.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

what are the children doing

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Country and city life

Guiding words:

(quiet - bright lights)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (10)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The chameleon is a kind of ....
   a) reptiles b) birds c) fish d) plants
2. They have amazing ....
   a) legs b) eyes c) arms d) teeth
3. They can change their ....
   a) shapes b) sizes c) bodies d) colors
4. They .... insects and leaves.
   a) drink b) change c) eat d) think

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The River Nile has two .... in Egypt.
   a) forests b) villages c) seas d) branches
2. We need a .... of water.
   a) piece b) bottle c) bar d) slice

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

friends - in - by - foot - far

My name is Waleed. I go to school on 1) .... I like walking because I can meet my 2) .... My friend Adam goes to school 3) .... bus. His house is 4) .... from school.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

We should stop air pollution. We can have energy - saving light bulbs in our apartments. We can have many plants on our balcony. We decided to change some things as a family. Mom takes the bus to work. My brother walks to school because his school is near.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about how to ....
   a) stop air pollution b) recycle c) write d) cook
2. My brother's school isn't ....
   a) near b) far c) hot d) low

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Mention two things to stop air pollution. ....
4. How does mom go to work? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You should .... (keeps) your password secret.
2. I .... (fall) over and my friend helped me.
3. You need to .... (creates) a password.
4. Where did Aya .... (went) last year?

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

hide and seek is a very old game

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Sham El-Nessim

Guiding words:

(park - play - salted fish - eggs - happy)

....

....

Exam (11)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It's important to be .... online.
   a) safe b) dangerous c) bad d) useless
2. You should keep your .... secret.
   a) address b) password c) number d) name
3. You .... share your personal information.
   a) can b) should c) must d) shouldn't
4. You shouldn't .... to be friends with people you don't know.
   a) share b) be c) accept d) keep

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Heba .... the present to see what was inside.
   a) wrapped b) unwrapped c) played d) sent
2. I played .... with my cousins.
   a) foods b) games c) jobs d) drinks

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

bottle - cake - drank - ate - bar

I had fun at the party. I 1) .... some juice. I only had a slice of 2) .... I ate the packet of cookies and a piece of cheese. I ate a 3) .... of chocolate. After that, I was thirsty so I had a 4) .... of water.



4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Last week, we went to Damietta to see grandma and grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the sea which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish. Grandpa caught a fish, which grandma made into a lovely dish. We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Last week, we went to ....

   a) **Luxor** b) **Cairo** c) **Aswan** d) **Damietta**

2. The dessert they had was ....

   a) **healthy** b) **unhealthy** c) **kind** d) **unkind**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why did you go to Damietta? ....

4. What did grandpa catch? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The village .... (is) very quiet when I lived here.
2. Did Eman .... (does) her homework?
3. You must .... (waited) for the green light to cross the road.
4. You need .... (in) look left and right before crossing the road.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

I am making a presentation with mona

....



7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Eid Al-Fitr

Guiding elements:

(When is Eid Al-Fitr? - How do we celebrate Eid Al-Fitr?)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (12)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim ....
   - a) festival
   - b) drink
   - c) food
   - d) game
2. It comes in the .... day of the10th Islamic month.
   - a) second
   - b) third
   - c) first
   - d) fourth
3. People eat .... to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr.
   - a) fish
   - b) kahk
   - c) eggs
   - d) meat
4. People say " .... " to their friends.
   - a) Eid Mubarak
   - b) Happy New Year
   - c) Happy Birthday
   - d) Goodbye

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I hurt my leg. It's very ....
   - a) helpful
   - b) beautiful
   - c) painful
   - d) colorful
2. We can .... the train at night.
   - a) go
   - b) catch
   - c) run
   - d) swim

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

player - out - music - run - sports

My favorite party game is the " Musical chairs". We put some chairs, play some 1) .... , and the players 2) .... around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down and the 3) .... without a chair is "4) ....".

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I am Reem. I went to the beach with my family on the weekend. We were sad because there was a lot of plastic trash from people's houses on the beach. I talked to my mom and she advised me to talk about the problem at school. I and my friends started to find information about beach clean up in different places. Then, we went to the beach again and collected all the plastic trash. The beach is now clean. Sea animals and birds can live in a clean place.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about ....
   - a) **beach clean up**
   - b) **visiting Alexandria**
   - c) **Mother's Day**
   - d) **school**
2. Reem talked about the problem at ....
   - a) **the beach**
   - b) **the club**
   - c) **school**
   - d) **home**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why were Reem and her family sad? ....
4. What did Reem and her friends do? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My mom .... (cooks) some vegetables last Sunday.
2. We need to .... (used) energy-saving light bulbs.
3. You .... (shouldn't) stay safe online.
4. Heba .... (be) excited yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

how many branches does the Nile have

....

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Eid Al-Fitr

Guiding words: **(kahk - festival)**

Exam (13)

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. I put on a .... T-shirt.
   a) green b) blue c) yellow d) red
2. My .... drove me to school.
   a) dad b) mom c) brother d) sister
3. I was ....
   a) happy b) nervous c) excited d) beautiful

2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

chameleons - color - homework - are

Mom: What 1) .... you doing, Dalia?
Dalia: I am doing my 2) ....
Mom: What is it about?
Dalia: It is about 3) ....
Mom: What can they do?
Dalia: They can change their 4) ....

3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches. There are many people living near the Nile. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

A) Answer the following questions.

1. Where do many people live?
....
2. What is the Nile home for?
....

B) Choose the correct answer.

3. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
   a) shortest b) longest c) tallest d) smallest
4. The Nile has .... branches.
   a) two b) one c) four d) three
5. The crocodile is a ....
   a) reptile b) bird c) human d) plant

4 Choose the correct answer.

1. I drank a .... of water yesterday.
   a) **bar** b) **slice** c) **bottle** d) **bowl**
2. I go to school .... foot.
   a) **on** b) **at** c) **in** d) **by**
3. We should use a strong .... to stay safe online.
   a) **message** b) **chat** c) **password** d) **search**
4. We can .... trees.
   a) **plan** b) **plants** c) **planting** d) **planted**
5. My grandma .... in a small village when she was young.
   a) **live** b) **lived** c) **lives** d) **living**

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. live - Where - mouse - did - the country - ?

....

2. turn off - should - at night - my - I - phone - .

....

3. a carton - drank - juice - Ali - of - .

....

4. must - signs - follow - road - We - the - .

....

5. your - What - favorite - festival - is - ?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Listening Texts

Unit (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It's about 6.670 kilometers long. The Nile is home for different fish, birds and turtles. One of the largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan. I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys. I didn't want to go to school.

Unit (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I have breakfast with my family every day. I like to have a packet of cookies. My father likes to have a slice of cake. My mother likes to have a piece of cheese. My sister likes to have a bar of chocolate.

2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I went to the cinema last night. I went with my friends. We went in a taxi. We saw a great movie. After the film we went to a good restaurant. We had a wonderful meal there. The prices were good. We had a lot of fun.

Unit (9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

In Egypt we make a lot of movies and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important prizes. And of course we love sports! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of the very famous karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.

2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

We all love to give presents. It's even more fun to open presents. How to play this game: Wrap a small present and cover it in lots and lots...and lots of paper. The players sit in a circle. Play some music. Players give the present to the next person as music plays. When the music stops, the player holding the present takes off one piece of paper. The player who unwraps the present keeps it.

Unit (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Many people say that computer games are very bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Good children go outside.

2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Noha researched for her homework on her tablet. She logged into some websites with her password. She looked at photos to help her choose a color for her bedroom. She was happy.

Unit (11)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Air pollution is very dangerous to us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.

2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

My favorite transportation is a ship. I love traveling on water. I enjoy watching the sea. I hear the sound of water only. I enjoy the fresh air from the sea. I can see many kinds of fish in water. All my family like traveling by ship.

Exams

Exam (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Last week, we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We saw lots of fish. Grandpa caught a fish which Grandma made into a lovely dish.

Exam (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The Nile is very important. It brings life to Egypt. The Nile is the longest river in the world. It helps us to grow our food. It has two branches.

Exam (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset. In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year.

Exam (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Grandpa's village was very quiet. Now, there is a lot of people. There were no cars in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars. Grandpa was eight years old when he buried the box of memories. Now, Grandpa is very old.

Exam (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. It happens in the first day of Shawwal. In Ramadan, people fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset. Many people make kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. Kahk are delicious cookies. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families.

Exam (6)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. Parents say this is not healthy for their children. Parents are sad.

Exam (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old. All my family came together to celebrate. We ate salad, meat, fish and fruit. We had chocolate cake also.

Exam (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Grandma says that her mom and dad drove gas cars. They were very noisy. Now we have electric cars that use electricity and gas. They are much cleaner and quieter.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old. All my family came together to celebrate. We ate salad, meat, fish and fruit. We had chocolate cake, too

Exam (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The chameleons are a kind of reptiles. They are interesting. They have amazing eyes. They change their colors. They are the same color as the place where they are. They eat insects and leaves.

Exam (11)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

It's important to be safe online. You should keep your password secret. You shouldn't share your personal information. You shouldn't accept to be friends with people you don't know.

Exam (12)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. It comes in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. People eat kahk. People say "Eid Mubarak" to their friends.

Exam (13) خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

I remember my first day of school. I put on a blue T-shirt and black shoes. My dad drove me to school. I was nervous. I didn't want to go. I want to stay at home and play with my toys.